

SYNOPSIS OF
ANCIENT LATIN GRAMMAR



J. MATTHEW HARRINGTON PH.D.
TUFTS UNIVERSITY – DEPARTMENT OF CLASSICS

© AUGUST 2017 - VERSION 3.1

SECTION I: WRITING SYSTEMS AND PRONUNCIATION

1.1	Writing Systems	1
1.2	Vocalic Phonemes	2
1.3	Consonantal Phonemes	2
1.4	Chart of Phonemes and Symbols in Classical Latin	3
1.5	Aspiration	3
1.6	Conditioned Sound Change	3
1.7	Syllabification	4
1.8	Quantity	4
1.9	Accent	5
1.10	Elision	5
1.11	Proto-Indo-European (PIE)	5
1.12	Latin Dialects	5
1.13	Educated Latin Pronunciation in the Early 1 st Century CE	8
1.14	Vulgar and Late Latin Pronunciation	9

SECTION II: CASE AND SYNTACTIC FUNCTION

2.1	Syntax	10
2.2	Semantic Word Order	10
2.3	Case and Morpho-Syntax	11
2.4	Adjectival Modification	12
2.5	Nominative	12
2.6	Genitive	12
2.7	Dative	14
2.8	Accusative	16
2.9	Ablative	19
2.10	Vocative	21
2.11	Locative	22
2.12	The Four Forms of Agreement	23

SECTION III: MOOD AND SUBORDINATION

3.1	Coordination/Subordination	24
3.2	Syntax of Verbal Forms	24
3.3	Independent Subjunctive Usages	25
	A. Hortatory Subjunctive	25
	B. Deliberative Subjunctive	25
	C. Potential Subjunctive	25
	D. Optative Subjunctive	25
3.4	Dependent Usages	25
	I. ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES	26
	A. <i>Relative Clause</i>	26
	B. <i>Relative Clause of Characteristic</i>	26
	C. <i>Relative Clause in Indirect Statement</i>	26
	II. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES	26
	A. <i>Purpose Clause</i>	27
	B. <i>Result Clause</i>	27

C. <i>Consecutive Clause</i>	28
D. <i>Conditional Constructions</i>	28
E. <i>Temporal Clause</i>	29
F. <i>Circumstantial Clause</i>	30
G. <i>Causal Clause</i>	30
H. <i>Concessive Clause</i>	31
I. <i>Clause of Comparison</i>	32
J. <i>Proviso Clause</i>	32
K. <i>Adverbial Relative Clauses</i>	32
1. <i>Relative Clause of Purpose</i>	32
2. <i>Relative Clause of Result</i>	32
3. <i>Conditional Relative Clause</i>	33
L. <i>Prepositional Phrase</i>	33
III. NOMINAL CLAUSES	34
A. <i>Substantive Noun Clause</i>	34
B. <i>Fear Clause</i>	34
C. <i>Indirect Question</i>	35
D. <i>Indirect Statement</i>	35
E. <i>Direct Statement</i>	36
3.5 Syntax of the Participle	36
A. <i>Temporal Circumstantial Participle</i>	36
B. <i>Causal Circumstantial Participle</i>	36
C. <i>Concessive Circumstantial Participle</i>	36
D. <i>Conditional Circumstantial Participle</i>	36
E. <i>Ablative Absolute</i>	37
3.6 Syntax of the Infinitive	37
A. <i>Complimentary Infinitive</i>	36
B. <i>Historical Infinitive</i>	36
C. <i>Explanatory (Epexegetical) Infinitive</i>	36
D. <i>Infinitive of Purpose</i>	36
E. <i>Infinitive Subject</i>	37
3.7 List of Subordinate Usages	37

SECTION IV: PRINCIPAL PARTS AND THEIR DERIVATIVES

4.1 Verbal Morphology	39
4.2 Verb Formation	39
4.3 Verb Endings	40
4.4 Linguistic Change and Variation in Verbal Forms	40
4.5 [esse]	42
4.6 Verbal Forms	42
4.7 Perfect Active System	44
4.8 Thematic Verbs - [amāre]	45
A. 1st Principal Part - Thematic	45
B. 2nd Principal Part - Thematic	45
C. 3rd Principal Part - Thematic	47
D. 4th Principal Part - Thematic	48

4.9	Athematic Verbs - [ferre]	50
A.	1 st Principal Part - Athematic	50
B.	2 nd Principal Part - Athematic	50
C.	3 rd Principal Part - Athematic	52
D.	4 th Principal Part - Athematic	52

SECTION V: MORPHOLOGICAL PARADIGMS

5.1	Noun Paradigms	53
5.2	Adjective Paradigms	56
5.3	Adverb Formation	58
5.4	Pronoun Paradigms	59
5.5	Numeral Paradigms	61
5.6	Thematic Verbal Paradigms	
A.	1 st Conjugation Verbal Form - [amāre]	63
B.	2 nd Conjugation Verbal Form - [habēre]	65
C.	3 rd Conjugation Verbal Form - [regere]	67
D.	3 rd -iō Conjugation Verbal Form - [capere]	69
E.	4 th Conjugation Verbal Form - [audīre]	71
5.7	Athematic Verbal Paradigms	
A.	Athematic Verb “to be” - [esse]	73
B.	Athematic Verb “to be able” - [posse]	74
C.	Athematic Verb “to go” - [īre]	75
D.	Athematic Verb “to want” - [velle]	76
E.	Athematic Verb “to not want” - [nōlle]	77
F.	Athematic Verb “to want more” - [mālle]	78
G.	Athematic Verb “to carry” - [ferre]	79
H.	Athematic Verb “to become” - [fierī]	81
I.	Athematic Verb “to give” - [dare]	82
5.8	Defective Verbal Paradigms	
A	Defective Verb “I say” - [inquam]	84
B	Defective Verb “I say” - [āiō]	85
C	Defective Verb “to speak” - [fārī]	86
D	Defective Verb “to be able” - [quīre]	87
E	Defective Verb “to eat” - [edere]	88
5.9	Thematic Verbal Synopsis	89
5.10	Thematic Verb Synopses (6 person/number)	91
5.11	Thematic Verb Paradigms (by Tense)	97

APPENDICES

Appendix A	Latin Poetic Meter	100
I	Dactylic Meters	102
II	Iambic and Trochaic Meters	102
III	Aeolic Meters	106
Appendix B	Proto-Indo-European Cases	108
Appendix C	Glossary	109

SECTION I: WRITING SYSTEMS AND PRONUNCIATION

1.1 Writing Systems: At some point around the late 9th or early 8th century BCE, contact with Phoenician traders allowed the transfer of alphabetic writing technology to the Greek culture.¹ The Phoenician script did not encode vowels, and so, some unused symbols were reassigned to Greek vocalic sounds, in Latin becoming [A E I O V].² Contact between the Greek and Etruscan cultures in the late 8th century BCE allowed the Etruscans to adapt the archaic Western Greek alphabet to the needs of their language. By the late 7th century BCE, the Etruscan alphabet was in turn adapted by the Romans, who modified letter forms and spellings as the spoken language changed over the centuries: e.g. creating [G] while all but eliminating [K] and deleting the unused [Z]. By the 1st century BCE, the desire to write words of Greek origin phonetically drove the adoption of the Greek characters [Y , Z] and the use of digraphs to represent aspirated Greek consonants [PH , TH , CH].³ In its post 1st century BCE form, the Latin alphabet was able to closely, but not perfectly, represent the range of sounds present in the dialect of Latin spoken by the educated elite of Rome.⁴

Phoenician (9 th BCE)	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z
Western Greek (8 th BCE)	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z
Archaic Etruscan (6 th BCE)	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z
Archaic Latin (7 th BCE)	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X
Archaic Latin (3 rd BCE)	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X
Classical Latin	A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z

The names of the letters were: ā, bē, cē, dē, ē, ef, gē, hā, ī, kā, el, em, en, ō, pē, qū, er, es, tē, ū, ix, ī Graeca, zēta. Claudius (*princeps* 41-54 CE) introduced three new letters [Ƀ , Ʉ , Ʌ], but they were quickly abandoned after his reign.⁵ In the Medieval period, new letters were created [J , U], miniscule (small cursive) letters were fashioned from the Uncial capital letters to conserve writing materials, spaces were placed between words, and punctuation added to make texts more accessible to less skilled readers. For convenience, modern scholars largely use the Medieval writing conventions, although the use of [J] for the consonantal [I] is infrequent.

We will be primarily concerned with the educated pronunciation of the Classical Latin of the 1st century CE.⁶ Between the 1st century CE and the 5th century CE, a series of sound changes resulted in the markedly different pronunciation (and orthography) of Latin in the Post-Classical period, resulting in a separation of the literary and the spoken language by the Medieval period. The fragmentation of the *Imperium Romanum*, coupled with many centuries of sound change, further differentiated the regional dialects of Vulgar Latin into French, Spanish, Italian, *etc.* **Remember, a Latin word is a sequence of sounds, NOT a sequence of letters.** The sound inventory (all of the possible sounds) of Classical Latin included these categories of *phonemes*:⁷

¹ There was nothing inevitable about the Greek language being written in a modified form of the Phoenician script.

² Two already extant symbols for Greek writing [Φ Ψ] are absent from Latin, as is [Ω] which had not yet been created at the time of the transfer. Two archaic letters that dropped out of use in some Greek areas [Φ Q] continued to be used in Latin. The letters [Y Z] were readopted from the Attic alphabet for writing words of Greek origin, and were placed at the end of the alphabet.

³ A *Digraph* is the use of two characters to represent a single *phoneme* (sound).

⁴ The Latin alphabet lacked characters for the velar nasal (ŋ) and did not consistently distinguish between long and short versions of the vowels; for didactic purposes, many introductory Latin texts mark long versions of the vowels with a macron: [ā , ē , ī , ō , ū].

⁵ The letter *digamma inversum* [Ƀ] represented a consonantal [V], and was analogous to the Greek letter *digamma* [ɤ]. The [Ƀ] is solidly attested in inscriptions, but the forms and functions of the other two letters are less certain. The letter antisigma [Ɔ] represented the cluster (ps) and was meant to replace [BS / PS], and was analogous to the Greek letter *psi* [Ψ]. The letter *H dimidia* [ɸ] represented a vocalic sound intermediate to (i) and (u).

⁶ Multiple socioeconomic and regional dialects of Latin existed contemporaneously, notably the Latin of the non-elite – Vulgar Latin.

⁷ A *phoneme* is unit of sound that can be distinguished meaningfully from all other sounds within a language. The exact pronunciation of a phoneme may vary in different phonetic contexts without creating a meaningful distinction to native speakers.

1.2 **Vocalic Phonemes:** are continuous sounds made with the vocal cords vibrating (voiced) that are able to be pronounced as a syllable, independent of other *phonemes*.

- A. **Vowels:** simple vocalic sounds that vary in quality depending on the position of the tongue and the shaping of the lips. Each Latin vowel [A E I O V] may be either long or short in *quantity*. Note that the difference between a long and short vowel can be the only difference between words; it is as significant a difference in spelling as between other letters. The Greek letter *upsilon* [Y] was found almost exclusively in words of Greek origin.
- B. **Diphthongs:** A *diphthong* is a single sound that glides between the two vowels from which it is composed: i.e. the tongue moves to a different point of articulation while it is being pronounced. *Diphthongs* are complex vocal sounds composed of simple vowels [A E I O V] followed by [I], [V] and later [E]; i.e. [AE , AV , (EI) , EV , OE , (OV) , VI].⁸ Before another vocalic sound, a diphthong partially retains the consonantal character of its glide [I , V]. Every diphthong is long in *quantity*.

1.3 **Consonantal Phonemes:** are sounds that are not able to be pronounced as a syllable independent of vocalic sounds. These *phonemes* may be made with vibration of the vocal cords (voiced) or without such vibration (voiceless), and they may vary in quality depending on the position of the tongue and the shaping of the lips, which it termed *articulation*. Pronounce double consonants individually: *ille* is il-le, not i-le.

- A. **Stop Consonants:** each of these consonants stops the flow of air, and is produced with a different position of the tongue and shaping of the lips within each series.
1. **Voiceless stop consonants:** [P , T , C] are made without vibration of the vocal chords.
 2. **Voiced stop consonants:** [B , D , G] each of these consonants corresponds to one of the voiceless series of stop consonants in every aspect except voicing: i.e. [B] is a voiced version of [P], [D] is a voiced version of [T], [G] is a voiced version of [C].
 3. **Aspirated stop consonants:** [TH , PH , CH] these digraphs represent the Attic Greek letters *thēta* [Θ], *phi* [Φ], and *chi* [Χ], and are found almost exclusively in words of Greek origin. In educated pronunciation, each corresponds to one of the voiceless series of stop consonants in every aspect except *aspiration* (a roughened breath of air joined to each consonantal sound).⁹
 4. **Labiovelars:** [QV (c^w) , GV (g^w)] these digraphs represent a single sound, a labialized voiceless [QV] or labialized voiced [GV] *velar*. Sometimes [SV (s^w)] could function similarly.
- B. **Nasals:** [M , N , (NG)] are voiced phonemes produced by resonance in the nasal cavities and a particular point of articulation with the tongue and/or lips. The Latin alphabet lacked a character for the *velar nasal*, with the result that [N] before [C , G , QV] represents a phoneme like the (n) in anchor.
- C. **Liquids:** [L , R] are voiced phonemes. Before a vowel, [L] was a “clear l” as in land, but before a consonant or in final position it was a “dark l” (velarized) as in pill. [R] is trilled as in Spanish.

⁸ By the early 2nd century BCE, the Archaic Latin diphthongs corresponding to Greek [αι] and [οι] underwent significant changes: [ai > ae] and [oi > oe]. [au] was unaltered. The other diphthongs were monophthongized either completely [ei > ī] [ou > ū] or partially [eu > ū], [oe > ū]. [ui] was rare. Note that not every instance of these digraphs is a *diphthong*: e.g. [ne + uter > ne-u-ter not neu-ter], [e-ius not ei-us], [a-er not aer].

⁹ [PH] (ph) is an aspirated [P], [TH] (th) is an aspirated [T], [CH] (ch) is an aspirated [C]. Among the non-elite and after the classical period, these *phonemes* degraded to fricatives: [p^h > f], [t^h > th], and [c^h > ch].

- D. **Glides:** [I , V] These voiced phonemes were able to function as either vowels or consonants, depending on the phonetic environment. When following a simple vowel as the second element of a diphthong, the glides still functioned as semi-vowels.¹⁰
- E. **Voiceless Fricative:** [F , S] The voiceless *labio-dental fricative* [F] was produced with the lips and upper teeth; the voiceless *alveolar fricative* [S] was produced with the tongue just above the teeth.
- F. **Voiced Fricative:** [Z] This voiced *fricative* represents the Greek letter *zeta* [Z] and is found exclusively in words of Greek origin.
- G. **Double Consonants:** [X , Z] The combination of either [C + S], or [G + S] was represented by the double consonant [X].¹¹ The Greek letter *zeta* [Z] is pronounced double [ZZ].

1.4 Chart of Phonemes and Symbols in Classical Latin:

	<i>Voiceless</i>	<i>Voiced</i>	<i>Aspirated</i>	<i>Nasal</i>	<i>Liquid</i>	<i>Glide</i>	<i>Fricative</i>	<i>V. Fricat.</i>
<i>Labial</i>	p	b	p^h	m		u	f	
<i>Dental</i>	t	d	t^h	n				
<i>Alveolar</i>					l , r		s	z
<i>Palatal</i>						i		
<i>Velar</i>	c	g	c^h	(ng)				
<i>Labiovelar</i>	q^u	g^u						

1.5 **Aspiration:** Latin [H] represents a roughened breath of air, much like the sound of the initial (h), in *hospitable*. Note that neither use of [H] represents a consonant.

- A. When occurring intervocalically or word-initially, [H] is derived from PIE [g^h] and generally behaves like a *velar* [C , G] in combination: [*veh-s-ī > vexī].
- B. When placed after three letters [C , P , T], [H] represent aspirated Greek consonants in transliterated Greek words [X (c^h) , Φ (p^h) , Θ (t^h)]: [φιλοσοφία > philosophia], [ἀμφιθέατρον > amphitheatrum].

1.6 **Conditioned Sound Change:** When phonemes are juxtaposed due to the joining of stems and suffixes within words or they are otherwise associated in sequence, generally predictable and systematic changes occurred to make pronunciation less difficult or to conform with sound laws and rules of accent.

- A. **Shortening of Vowels:** When long vowels occurred before a final [-ō , -m , -r , -t , -nt , -ntur] or before internal [-nt- , -nd-] they were shortened: e.g. [amā-s] but [ama-t]. In sequences of two long vowels, the first was usually shortened: [rēī > reī].
1. **Iambic Shortening:** The long final vowel of a disyllabic word that has a short 1st syllable is often shortened: e.g. [benē > bene], [quasī > quasi]. In meter, termed *brevis breviāns*.
- B. **Vowel Contraction:** When vocalic sounds come together within a word due to the combination of stems and other elements or due to the loss of intervocalic [H], [V], or [I], they contract into a long vowel or a diphthong: e.g. [nihil > nīl], [mihi > mī], [cum + agō > coagō > cōgō].

¹⁰ When a diphthong preceded another vowel, the glide element of a *diphthong* [i , u] developed a slight, additional consonantal aspect to its pronunciation: e.g. [maior] would have been pronounced as if it were [mai-ior].

¹¹ The unvoiced [S] will devoice the preceding voiced [G] through regressive assimilation.

- C. **Vowel Weakening:** Short vowels and diphthongs found in unaccented, word-internal positions often underwent changes toward less open or less back forms: [a > e > i], [a > o > u], [o > e / i], [u > i]. This effect is most common in compound forms: [in + caedō > incīdō], [duo + decem > duodecim], [manus + fēstus > manīfēstus]. The original *quantity* of the vocalic sound, however, was generally preserved: [ob + caedō > occīdō], [in + claudō > inclūdō].
- D. **Assimilation:** When two consonants are brought together within a word, the first consonant often alters to more closely match the second consonant, which is termed *Regressive Assimilation*. Although far less common, *Progressive Assimilation* also occurs: [*vel-se > velle].
1. *Complete Assimilation* alters both the voicing and articulation: e.g. [ad + loquor > adloquor > alloquor] (the voiced *dental* [D] completely assimilates to the initial *liquid* of [loquor]).
 2. *Partial Assimilation* alters in either voicing or articulation: e.g. [reg- + tus > regtus > rectus] (the voiced *velar* [G] partially assimilates to the voiceless *dental* of [-tus]).
- E. **Omission:** Some original final consonants were lost (*apocope*) by the time of Classical Latin, particularly when part of a consonant cluster: [*arātrōd > arātrō], [*lact > lac]. In the 3rd declension, *apocope* frequently results from the addition of the *Nominative* [-s]: [*lapid-s > *lapiss > lapis]. Internal [LL] and [SS] were often simplified (*syncope*): [*mīs-sī > mīsī].
- F. **Rhotacism:** intervocalic [S] was extensively altered, becoming an [R] by the mid 4th century BCE: e.g. [*esit > erit], [*amā-se > amāre], but [es-se > esse] since this [S] was not intervocalic.

1.7 **Syllabification:**¹² a syllable is a single vocalic sound (vowel or diphthong) pronounced together with any associated consonants.¹³ A syllable ends as soon as the vowel or diphthong is reached, unless:

- A. more than one distinct consonantal sound follows (the consonants are then split between the two syllables [*ille* : il-le])
1. [X] and [Z] are double consonants [*dixī* : dic-sī; *Mezentius* : Mez-zen-ti-us].
 2. Stop consonants [p , b , t , d , c , g] followed by liquids [l , r] usually count as one consonant and remain with the following syllable [*patria* : pa-tri-a].
- B. a final consonant would otherwise be orphaned [*Marcus* : Mar-cus not Mar-cu-s].

1.8 **Quantity:** The metrical length of a syllable is the amount of time that it takes to pronounce that syllable.¹⁴ A *Long Syllable* takes roughly twice the time to pronounce as a *Short Syllable*.¹⁵ A syllable is short unless:

- A. **Long by Nature** because it contains a long vowel [ā , ē , ī , ō , ū , ŷ] or a diphthong [ae , au , ei , eu , oe , ui];
- B. **Long by Position** because it contains a vowel followed by two distinct consonantal sounds:
1. both [X] (cs) and [Z] (zz) represent a double consonant.
 2. stop consonants [P , B , T , D , C , G] followed by liquids [L , R] are usually pronounced as one consonantal sound, and thus do not make position. In poetry, they may be pronounced separately to fit the meter.

¹² There are a number of refinements that are required to interpret an impressionistic sequence of characters into the spoken language that it was intended to represent. The ability to correctly segment a word (syllabification), pronounce its segments for the proper time (quantity), and place emphasis correctly (accent) are key skills of a native speaker.

¹³ Im-pe-rā-tor Cae-sar **Au-gus-tus** Pa-ter Pa-tri-ae Con-sul. *Augustus*: antepenultima **Au-** (stopping as soon as the *diphthong* is completed), penultima: **-gus-** (including the s of the consonant cluster st), ultima: **-tus** (the final s cannot stand alone as a syllable without a vocalic sound).

¹⁴ Since Latin poetic meters are based on *quantity*, correct pronunciation is crucial to the study of Latin poetry.

¹⁵ When metrical quantity is discussed, it is the syllable that is long or short; thus, a syllable that is *Long by Position* may contain a vowel that is *Short by Nature*. The pronunciation of a vowel is not changed due to the quantity of the syllable in which it is located.

3. [H] is a breathing mark (aspirant) and thus does not count as a consonant.
4. [CH , TH, PH] represent the aspirated Greek letters chi (X), theta (Θ), and phi (Φ) respectively , and thus count as one consonant.
5. [QV (q^w), GV (g^w), and sometimes SV (s^w)] count as one consonant.

1.9 **Accent:** Additional vocal stress falls on one of the final three syllables of a Latin word. Classical Latin accent is recessive; it moves as far from the end of a word as allowed by the rules of accent:

A. **antepenultima** (3rd from the final syllable – *ante-paene-ultima syllaba*):

- i. The *antepenultima* can only be accented if the *penultima* is short: [pá-tri-ae].

B. **penultima** (2nd from the final syllable – *paene-ultima syllaba*):

- i. in words of two syllables, the *penultima* is accented: [pú-er], not [pu-ér].
- ii. otherwise, if the *penultima* is long, it is accented: [Au-gús-tus]

C. **ultima** (final syllable – *ultima syllaba*):

- i. Can be accented only in a monosyllabic word: e.g. [nōn].

D. **enclitics:** [-que , -ve , -ne , -met , -pte , -c(e) , -cum , -te , (-pse)] A few small words in Latin have no accent of their own and must be pronounced and written together with the preceding word, as if the two were a single word: e.g. [pá-tri-a + -que > pa-tri-á-que].¹⁶

1.10 **Elision:** Much as in modern French, in daily speech and all literary forms (both prose and poetry) the final syllable of one Latin word typically elided into the initial syllable of the following word, if the 1st word ended in a vocalic sound and the 2nd word began with a vocalic sound. The final vowel (or vowel +**M**) of the 1st word is elided (along with any initial **H** of the second word):

- A. initial [**H-**] is not a consonant and so does not protect a word from elision; [quārē habē > quār^ē habē > quār' abē]
- B. final [-**M**] represents a nasalized final vowel and so does not protect a word from elision; [cum ausus > c^{um} ausus > c' ausus]
- C. BUT if the 2nd word is [est], the [E] of [est] is suppressed through *Prodelision* (along with any final [-**M**] of the 1st word); thus [gratum est > gratu^m est > gratu' st]. In poetic texts, especially drama, and in Cicero such forms are typically written in a pre-combined form: e.g. gratumst.

1.11 **Proto-Indo-European (PIE):** Proto-Indo-European (PIE) began to spread from the area north of the Black Sea before 3,000 BCE, and each of its daughter languages preserves certain aspects of the original parent language and has certain unique innovations. PIE had a number of phonemes that were not preserved unaltered in Ancient Latin, including three laryngeal glides and the three aspirated consonants.

1.12 **Dialects:** Latin was only one of a number of branches of PIE spoken in the Italian peninsula prior to the period of Roman control; indeed, its extent was restricted to the small area of *Latium* prior to the expansion of the *Imperium Romanum* beyond this plain in the 4th century BCE. The expansion of Roman control did not, however, cause the immediate replacement of local languages with Roman Latin, but it did lead to a greatly increased level of Latin usage – to significantly varied degrees of competence – within an already multilingual region. Intersections between Latin and local languages/cultures generated innumerable local

¹⁶ An *enclitic* “leans on” [ἐγκλίνει] the accented word before it. Enclitics change the normal accent of the words with which they are pronounced, by drawing the accent to the syllable before the enclitic.

dialects (and local scripts) that showed significant phonetic, orthographic, and syntactic variation. Many dialectal forms are known only from inscriptions. In this complex setting, the Roman literary dialect was created across centuries by the community of the educated elite, weaving together Greek literary composition and genres with native Latin oral and written literary forms. It is this artificial dialect, in its late 1st century BCE to the late 2nd century CE form – Classical Latin, that came to be the prime point of reference for correct literary usage, especially during the Renaissance. By contrast, the many variants of the common spoken dialects (Vulgar Latin) were the foundations of the later Romance Languages: e.g. Spanish, French, Italian, Romanian, Portuguese, Catalan.

A. **Literary Latin:** It is crucial to realize that full comprehension of the literary dialect of Latin was acquired only through the rigorous and highly structured literary and grammatical education available *in tōtō* solely to the Roman elite. Roman elite education encompassed meticulous abstract study of grammar, extensive mastery of Greek and Latin literary texts, and oratorical/legal training. Literary Latin was never a spoken dialect, and thus the great majority of ancient Latin speakers – no matter their decades of experience with the spoken language – could not fully comprehend the structures and nuance of the literary dialect.

1. **Archaic Latin:** (7th to early 1st BCE) The dialect preserved in the fragments of the *12 Tables* and the works of Plautus, Ennius, Terence, Cato the Elder, Lucilius, *et ceteri*. Archaic usages and forms continued to be used throughout the period of Classical Latin as elements of style by authors such as Sallust; such stylistic usage of archaic forms is termed archaism.
2. **Classical Latin:** (early 1st BCE to late 2nd CE) Heavily influenced by Greek literary forms, Classical Latin is the developed literary dialect of the end of the *Respublica* and the first centuries of the Principate. Classical Latin even imported some syntax from Greek literary usage.
 - a. **Augustan Latin:** The majority of preserved ancient Latin texts were written in the literary Latin of the beginning of the Principate: e.g. Horace, Vergil, Livy, Ovid, Vitruvius, *et ceteri*.
 - b. **Post-Augustan Latin:** While there is a marked distinction in literary style and interests, the inaccurately termed “Silver Latin” does not represent a decline in literary skill or usage from the prior literature: e.g. Petronius, Lucan, Juvenal, Tacitus, Apuleius, *et ceteri*.
3. **Late Latin:** (3rd to 6th CE) The Latin of a period of further divergence between the literary and spoken dialects situated in a time of major social transformation shows marked differences in style and usage from the Classical Latin on its way toward Medieval Latin: e.g. Ulpianus, Tertullianus, Ammianus Marcellinus, Eutropius, Ausonius, *et ceteri*.
4. **Medieval Latin:** (6th to 15th CE) The Latin of the educated and ruling elite of the Medieval period, encompassing the language of the Church, as well as of law, science, literature, and administration: e.g. Augustine, Boethius, Bede, Gregory of Tours, Abelard, *et ceteri*. Although nominally functioning as a *lingua Franca* enabling universal communication between intellectuals, major differences in pronunciation could make spoken Latin problematic by the end of the period.
 - a. **Ecclesiastical Latin:** The liturgical, literary, and administrative Latin of the Catholic Church which remains in limited use to the present. Ecclesiastical Latin is highly varied in style and usage and often shows significant intersections with earlier authors, e.g. the Vulgate, the Church Fathers, and Classical authors like Cicero. In modern usage, Ecclesiastical Latin is pronounced phonemically like Italian.
5. **Neo-Latin:** (14th to 19th CE) Deriving from the archaizing Latin of the Renaissance Humanists, Neo-Latin was the literary language of the scholarly community of the Early Modern period: e.g. Erasmus, Copernicus, Kepler, Galileo, Newton, *et ceteri*.

- a. **Renaissance Latin:** In the 14th and 15th centuries CE there was a literary movement to consciously return to the usage of the Classical Latin authors, especially Cicero and Vergil; this movement was closely linked to Renaissance Humanism and the scholarly community: e.g. Petrarch, Bruni, *et ceteri*. Intensive study of the Classical sources yielded major corrections to the corrupted Medieval orthographies and allowed the creation of edited texts of Classical works.

B. Vulgar Latin:

1. **Spoken Dialect:** The manifold varieties of the Latin *sermo vulgaris* stood in opposition to the literary/elite dialect at each point in time, but the degree of separation between the two tended to increase over time due to the conservatism in change induced by the continued use of earlier literary texts as exemplars of proper usage and style. Changes in pronunciation operate differentially across region, time, and social class (level of education). Misspellings based on confusion between sounds often indicate the beginning of a change in phonology or syntax. In the 6th through the 9th centuries CE, the divergence between the *sermo vulgaris* and the liturgical (literary) Latin increased to the extent that the liturgy could no longer be understood by those without special training; at this point, the *sermo vulgaris* in each area represented an early form of the local Romance language.

1.13 Educated Latin Pronunciation in the early 1st Century CE Although there were only 23 letters in the standard Latin alphabet of the 1st century CE, there were at least 42 *phonemes* that were indicated using these letters in three manners: by individual letters, by *digraphs*ⁱ (*diphthongs* and Greek *aspirated stop consonants*), or by a sequence of letters (the *velar nasal*).ⁱⁱ The Classical Latin alphabet lacked standard symbols to indicate the *quantity* of vowels or the consonantal use of either [I] or [V].ⁱⁱⁱ There were no silent letters in Classical Latin; pronounce each *phoneme* separately.

Symbol	Sound	Example	Notes
A	a	cup	aquila
	ā	fāther	āfrica
AE	ae	high	Caesar
AV	au	how	Augustus
B	b	bread	bellum
C	c	cat	cornua
CH	ch	break-hand	chaos
D	d	draw	duo
E	e	pet	est
	ē	aim	fēmina
EI	ei	eight;	(deicerent)
EV	eu		Eurōpa
F	f	fight	faciō
G	g	god	gerō
GV	gu	guano	lingua
H	h	vehicle	hostis
I	i	dip	imāgō
	ī	deep	īnsula
I	i	yam	iaciō
K	k	cat	kalendae
L	l	left	laevus
M	m	map	mare
N	n	next	novus
NG	ng	anchor	lingua
O	o	dog	oppidum
	ō	bone	Rōma
OE	oe	boy	poena
OV	ou	ghoul	(noundinum)
P	p	drip	praeda
PH	ph	sleep-hard	philosophia
QV	qu	quick	quattuor
R	r	growl	rēctus
S	s	sit	sestertius
T	t	shot	terminus
TH	th	hot-head	theātrum
V	u	put	sunt
	ū	tool	Iūlius
V	u	west	vestrum
VI	ui		cui
X	x	tax	dīxit
Y	y	French “tū”	cylindrus
	ȳ		peristȳlum
Z	z	zest	zephyrus

1.14 Vulgar and Late Latin Pronunciation Among the lower socioeconomic strata in the 1st century CE and increasingly across socioeconomic strata in the period of the 1st - 5th centuries CE, pronunciation differed sharply from that of the educated pronunciation of the 1st century CE. A series of sound changes spread from the lower socioeconomic strata: the long and short vowels were no longer distinct and *diphthongs* were largely monophongized [*Clau*dus > Clōdus], the Greek *aspirated stop consonants* [PH , TH , CH] were pronounced as *fricatives*,^{xxiii} the use of the cases was significantly reduced,^{xxiv} many changes and variations in orthography occurred as a result of changes in pronunciation and usage. The fragmentation of the *Imperium Romanum*, coupled with many centuries of continued sound change, further differentiated the regional dialects of Vulgar Latin into modern French, Spanish, Italian, *etc.* These daughter languages of Classical Latin could be called Modern Latin no less properly than Modern Greek is so called as a descendent of Classical Greek.

^I A *digraph* is the use of two characters to represent a single *phoneme*: the *diphthongs* [AE , AV , EI , EV , OE , OV , VI], the Greek *aspirated stop consonants* [PH , TH , CH], and the velar nasal [NC , NG , NQV].

^{II} Latin lacked a character for the *velar nasal*. Instead, the *velar nasal* is indicated by the use of the *dental nasal* character [N] before any *velar stop consonant* character: [C , G , QV], resulting in the consonant clusters [NC , NG , NQV]. The pronunciation of the *velar stop consonant* was not changed. Note that these consonant clusters are not digraphs; they represent two *phonemes*.

^{III} Epigraphic evidence shows three manners of indicating a long vowel: the use of an *apex* character over a vowel [PÁSTOR], the use of *geminatio vocalium* (doubling of vowels) [PAASTOR], and the use of the *I longa* (an unusually tall letter [I] to indicate a long [I]) [LIBER]. None of these methods became standard, and their use was inconsistent across period and location.

^{IV} All *diphthongs* are *digraphs* representing a single *phoneme* composed of two vocalic sounds; all *diphthongs* are *Long by Nature*.

^V Archaic Latin [AI] became [AE] by the 2nd century BCE; it also occurs in Greek loanwords to represent [aɪ].

^{VI} BS and BT were pronounced as PS and PT ([B] is devoiced to [P] by the voiceless [S] or [T]): [urbs] was pronounced "urps", not "urbz"; [optineo] was pronounced "optineo"

^{VII} Proper only to Greek loan words, this form spread to some Latin words due to mistaken etymologies: e.g. *pulcher*.

^{VIII} Archaic Latin [EI] became [ī] by the 2nd century BCE: [deicerent > dīcerent]. [EI] occurs in Classical Latin only in contracted (usually poetic) forms: [dein-de] in place of [de-in-de], or [reī] in place of the standard pronunciation [re-ī].

^{IX} PIE [EV] fused with [OV] in Italic and became [ū] by the 2nd century BCE, [EV] occurs in Classical Latin only in the Latin words [neu , ceu , seu , heu , heus] and in Greek loanwords representing [εὔ].

^X The Greek letter gamma [Γ] came to be used for the Latin *unvoiced velar* as [C], necessitating the creation of a new symbol [G] (by adding a small crossbar to the letter [C]) for the *voiced velar* in the 4th / 3rd century BCE.

^{XI} In an internal position [H] was virtually silent. Thus, [H] does not prevent elision or make a preceding syllable *Long by Position*.

^{XII} The letter J was created in the middle ages to represent the consonantal [I]. As in Greek, intervocalic consonantal [I] could be lost, frequently resulting in vowel contraction.

^{XIII} In Archaic pronunciation, [L] was a "clear l" as in land before a vowel, but before a consonant or in final position it was a "dark l" (velarized) as in pill. Vowels before a dark l sometimes changed to back vowels: [*veltis > vōltis].

^{XIV} [M] in a final, unaccented syllable represents a nasalization of the preceding vowel. Thus final M does not prevent elision. In common speech, final M was unpronounced. The Romans used the term *mytacism* to describe mispronouncing final [M].

^{XV} Most instances of [OE] became [ū] or [ī] by the 2nd century BCE: [oīnos > ūnus], [servōis > servīs]. [OE] occurs in Greek loanwords to represent [οἰ] or [ωἰ].

^{XVI} Most instances of [OV] became [ū] by the 2nd century BCE; it occurs infrequently in inscriptions thereafter. Rarely, [OV] occurs in Greek loanwords (typically Homeric names) to represent [oo]: [Ἀλκάθοος > Alcathous].

^{XVII} English initial P has a slight aspiration, and so only non-initial P matches the unaspirated Latin [P].

^{XVIII} Final [S] was frequently not pronounced in Archaic Latin poetry, resulting in elision and short syllables that would otherwise be *Long by Position*. This habit of pronunciation was also associated with Vulgar and Late pronunciation.

^{XIX} [T] is never pronounced like *sh* as in *Potīon* or *ch* as in *Sentīent*. English initial T has a slight aspiration, and so only non-initial T matches the unaspirated Latin [T].

^{XX} The letters U and W were created in the middle ages to represent vowel and consonant uses of Latin [V]. As in Greek, intervocalic consonantal [V] could be lost, frequently resulting in vowel contraction.

^{XXI} The *diphthong* [VI] is a Latin innovation that occurs in only a very few words. PIE (and Greek) have no such *diphthong*.

^{XXII} [X] derives from the consonant clusters [C-S; G-S; H-S (Latin H derives from PIE gh)]; all voiced elements are devoiced by the voiceless [S]: [*duc-s > dux ; *dic-s-ī > dixī ; *lēg-s > lēx ; *veh-s-ī > vexī].

^{XXIII} It was a point of elite pride to pronounce [Φ , Θ , X] as *aspirated stop consonants* according to the educated pronunciation of 5th century BCE Greek (Classical Greek) rather than as fricatives as was typical of *Koiné* Greek. The Greek-speaking members of the Roman lower classes (freedmen and slaves) spoke versions of *Koiné* Greek.

^{XXIV} The prepositions took over most of the functions of the cases, with the result that the distinctions between case forms were eventually lost, other than in the personal pronouns.

SECTION II: CASE AND SYNTACTIC FUNCTION

2.1 **SYNTAX:** *Syntax* [σύνταξις < σύν + τάττειν – to arrange together] is the placing together of words, phrases, and clauses in accord with a specific set of grammatical rules, in order to create meaningful utterances. Ancient Latin, like Greek, Sanskrit and many other descendants of Proto-Indo-European, was a highly **inflected** language: i.e. it used different morphemes to indicate nearly every aspect of syntactic function.¹⁷ The term *Semantic* [σημαντικός < σῆμα – symbol by which something is recognized] describes the property of signifying meaning. Only the full engagement with all of the interacting elements of Latin usage (word choice, morphology, syntax, and stylistic arrangement) will allow the comprehension of the Latin as Latin with its full semantic force. The operation of Latin syntax is radically different from English syntax. For this reason, conveying the intended semantic force of the original Latin into English translation is effectively impossible and will result in increasingly stilted English the closer one comes to the Latin. Conversely, syntactic expectations raised by particular English words will frequently be incongruent with the constructions expected by the Latin words in question.

- A. *Modification:* Each element of a Latin sentence – words, phrases, and clauses – modifies (alters or refines) the meaning of one and only one other element of the sentence, which may in turn modify another element, leading eventually up to the core idea of the sentence – the main verb of the independent clause, which is called the *Predicate*. The *Predicate* is the irreducible core of the sentence which may be modified by many or few dependent structures of greater or lesser complexity.
- B. *Dependency:* With the exception of the *Predicate*, each element of a sentence is dependent [*dēpendere* – to hang down] from the element that it modifies: its *Head*. The dependent element– the *Modifier* – is only present in the sentence so that it can modify its *Head*. The semantic nature of this relationship between a given *Modifier* and its *Head* (modification) is what is indicated by the use of syntactic terminology, and this characterization of modification is crucial for unpacking the full nuance and force of the language.¹⁸ This mode of conceptualizing Latin grammar is visualized in the Tufts Dependency Treebanks, where each dependent element hangs below the element that it modifies within the syntactic tree.
- C. *Syntactic Terminology:* The ability to cite particular terms for the different case usages and different types of clauses is irrelevant in itself; the established terminology is only valuable in that it allows meaningfully different structures within Latin usage to be discussed efficiently, specifically, and consistently. The term *Dative of Reference*, for example, is irrelevant in itself, but the specific function of the *Dative* case to restrict the applicability of an adjective or an idea to one specific person or group must be distinguished from other uses of the *Dative* case – so that we can understand the semantic force of that particular *Dative* word. Since we must call it something, *Dative of Reference* will work as well as anything, if and only if we know what using that term signifies about the syntax and semantics of that particular word.

2.2 **SEMANTIC WORD ORDER:** Although being vastly more free than in English, due to the inflected nature of Ancient Latin, word order was semantic in Ancient Latin, conforming to strong tendencies and being

¹⁷ English is minimally inflected (e.g. he, his, him), with the result that word order is much less free than in Latin and – crucially – many more words are typically needed to fully convey in English translation the full semantic force of a Latin sentence.

¹⁸ Commentary and grammatical texts ???

used to create emphasis and rhetorical force. The precise syntactic structure of subordination and modification can only be understood in sequence, and thus reading Latin out of sequence (i.e. jumping around) makes full comprehension of the semantic force of the Latin impossible, as it frequently leads to incorrect understanding of modification.

2.3 CASE AND MORPHO-SYNTAX: In Ancient Latin, substantives (nouns, pronouns, or adjectives) have different inflected forms (spellings that alternate meaningfully) that indicate specific syntactic functions. Morphology and syntax are thus not two separate phenomena, but only two aspects of one process that – when combined with sequential word order – creates meaning: morpho-syntax. Proto-Indo-European (PIE) had at least eight cases, possibly nine, each indicating specific syntactic relations, Classical Latin retained six cases in full and one case in vestigial form. This fact explains why the Latin *Ablative Case* has more than a single broad function. This fact also explains why the case functions of Greek – also derived from PIE – are sometimes associated with a different case than in Latin.¹⁹ For nouns, there are five broad patterns of changes that are termed declensions; for adjectives, there are two broad patterns of declension. These inflected forms are described based on the properties of *case*, *number*, and *gender*:

- A. **Case** – [nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, ablative, vocative, (locative)] indicates what the syntactic function (usage) of the substantive can be. The sequential context indicates which exact usage is meant and which exact structure is being modified; reading Latin out of sequence is thus certain to result in error.²⁰
- B. **Number** – [singular, (dual), plural] indicates whether there is one or more than one. The dual indicates exactly two entities and is all but absent in Classical Latin: e.g. *duō*, *ambō*.
- C. **Gender** – [masculine, feminine, neuter] indicates the grammatical category of the noun. While grammatical gender correlates strongly with biological gender, they are not equivalent.

Case is the beginning, middle, and end of a great deal of Latin syntax (the way that words are strung together to create meaning); there is thus no mastery of syntax without mastery of morphology (the forms).

- ❖ It is the *case* that indicates the grammatical functions of all substantives, not the prepositions²¹ that are sometimes construed with the cases, and not word order alone.
- ❖ Each inflected word modifies one and only one other element (word or structure) within the sentence; the semantic nature of this modification is what is indicated by case usage terminology: e.g. the *Ablative of Agent* modifies a passive verbal form to indicate the doer of the passive action.
- ❖ The uses of each *case* are particular to substantive usages (nouns, pronouns, or adjectives functioning substantively [like nouns]).

¹⁹ Cf. Appendix B.

²⁰ By analogy, a business suit, a tuxedo, and a t-shirt can mean very different things depending on where one wears them and who else is present. To a native speaker, the case of a word was essential to its meaning and in context was as obvious as wearing a tuxedo or holding up a flashing neon sign saying: “I am the *Direct Object*.”

²¹ The prepositions were originally adverbs. This fact explains why four of the prepositions can be construed with either the *Accusative* or the *Ablative* case, and it explains why the prepositions so easily are prefixed to verbal forms. The prepositions, thus, clarify or modify the syntactic functions of the cases in Classical Latin.

- ❖ When one substantive stands in apposition to another (i.e. renames another) the *case* of the substantive in apposition is simply in agreement with the substantive it renames; it is not itself a *Direct Object*.²²

2.4 ADJECTIVAL MODIFICATION: An adjective modifying a substantive (usually a noun) in any case is simply in agreement with the noun: e.g. it is not itself an *Ablative of Agent*. It is agreement in case, number, and gender (not in apparent spelling of endings) that marks an adjective as modifying a noun. Forms that adjectivally modify a noun - adjectives, participles (and all words within their phrases), prepositional phrases, genitives, relative clauses - are often found following the substantive that they modify, although superlative adjectives, cardinal numeral adjectives, and other adjectives used emphatically typically precede the substantive that they modify.

2.5 NOMINATIVE: The Latin *Nominative* case continues the semantic function of the PIE *Nominative* (the subject and ideas related to the subject).

- I. **Subject:** The *Subject* of a finite verb²³ (*Active*, *Deponent*, or *Passive*): e.g. Iūlius ad villam suam venit. (Iulius comes to his own house.); Aemilia, quae fēmina pulchra est, rīdet. (Aemilia, who is a beautiful woman, laughs.)²⁴
- II. **Predicate Nominative:** Indicates the complement to the *Subject* with a state of being verb (copulative verb) or in a nominal sentence: e.g. Mārcus filius improbus est. (Marcus is a wicked son.)²⁵ The noun [filius] does not modify the noun [Mārcus] like an adjective; it stands in the predicate to indicate what [Mārcus] *is*. The *Predicate Nominative* is also used in *Indirect Statement*, when the Subject of the verbal form is the same as the form in the predicate: e.g. Mārcus indoctus esse vidētur. (Marcus seems to be uneducated.)²⁶

2.6 GENITIVE: The Latin *Genitive* case functions as an adjectival modifier and continues the semantic function of the PIE *Genitive* (possession/limitation).²⁷ In most instances it can be loosely translated with: “of.”

- I. **Genitive of Possession:** Shows possession, in which it “limits” a noun or adjective: e.g. Fīlia Iūlii laeta est. (The daughter of Iulius is happy.) Iūlius, cuius fīlia Iūlia est, quoque pater Mārci est. (Iulius, whose

²² Apposition - Tac. *Ann.* 1.3: Tiberium Neronem et Claudium Drūsum prīvignōs imperātōriīs nōminibus auxit (He augmented Tiberius Nero and Claudius Drusus, the step-sons, with imperial names). Tiberium Nerōnem and Claudium Drūsum form a compound *Direct Object* of the verb auxit, while prīvignōs stands in apposition, agreeing in case.

²³ The *Nominative* also functions as the *Subject* of a *Historical Infinitive*: e.g. Mārcus Quīntum pulsāre, sed Iūliam castīgāre. (Marcus hit Quintus, but he castigated Iulia.) The *Historical Infinitive* is used in narrative passages most often to take the place of an *Imperfect* indicative, particularly by Sallust, Livy, and Tacitus. This construction is almost always found in independent clauses.

²⁴ *Subject* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.5: haec atque talia agitantibus gravescere valētūdo Augustī, et quīdam scelus uxōris suspectābant (with people stirring up these and such matters, the health of Augustus became serious, and certain men were suspecting the evil deed of his wife).

²⁵ *Predicate Nominative* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.5: prīmum facinus nōvī principātūs fuit Postumī Agrippae caedēs (the first wicked deed of the principate was the slaughter of Agrippa Postumus).

²⁶ In poetry, the *Predicate Nominative* can also be used in *Indirect Statement*: Mārcus dīcit esse pulsātus ā Quīntō. (Marcus says that he was hit by Quintus.)

²⁷ While many of the case usages of the *accusative*, *dative*, and *ablative* cases are *Adverbial* in sense, the *genitive* usages tend to be *Adjectival* in sense. For this reason, the *genitive* usages tend to limit substantives, while the other cases predominately modify verbal forms and adjectives.

daughter is Iulia, is also the father of Marcus.)²⁸ Of every possible *fīlia*, only the one belonging to Iulius is indicated.

- A. **Subjective Genitive:** A subset of the *Genitive of Possession* that limits a noun of verbal meaning (often derived from a verbal stem), as if the *genitive* form were the subject of the verbal idea implied in the noun: e.g. metus discipulī malum magistrum delectat. (The student's fear delights the evil teacher; as if *discipulus metuit*.)²⁹ It is vastly more common for a noun of verbal meaning to be limited by an *Objective Genitive*.
- II. **Partitive Genitive:** Specifies the group of which the limited word is a part: e.g. Aliquis puerōrum mālum Mārcī cēpit. (Someone of the boys took the apple of Marcus. “someone” is a part of the “boys.”)³⁰ Quid rationis Mārcus habet? (What of a reason does Marcus have.) The *Partitive Genitive* often limits *superlative* forms: Mārcus improbissimus puerōrum est. (Marcus is the most wicked of the boys.)
- III. **Objective Genitive:** Limits a noun of verbal meaning (often derived from a verbal stem), as if the *genitive* form were the object of the verbal idea implied in the noun: e.g. Mārcus metum magistrī nōn habet. (Marcus does not have a fear of the teacher; as if [Mārcus nōn] *metuit magistrum*.)³¹
- IV. **Genitive of Description:** Typically a *genitive* noun modified by an adjective which collectively describe another noun: e.g. Aemilia fēmina summae pudicitiae est. (Aemilia is a woman of the highest chastity.)³²
- V. **Genitive of Characteristic:** Specifies of what sort of person or group some action or state of being (often expressed with an *infinitive*) is characteristic. The *Genitive of Characteristic* occurs in the predicate, typically of a copulative sentence: e.g. Est magistrī docēre discipulōs et artēs et mōrēs. (It is (the characteristic) of a teacher to teach the students both skills and morals.)³³
- VI. **Genitive of Value:** Denotes how much a thing is (roughly) worth: e.g. Vīlla Iūliī magnī pretiī est. (The country estate of Julius is of a great price.) Mārcus Diodorum nōn pilī esse cogitat. (Marcus thinks that

²⁸ *Genitive of Possession* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.5: audītōs in funere eius Marciae gemitūs sēmet incūsantis quod causa exitiī marītō fuisset (the groans of Marcia were heard at his funeral accusing herself, because she had been the cause of death for her husband).

²⁹ *Subjective Genitive* - Tac. *Agric.* 2: scilicet illo igne vocem populi Romani et libertatem senatus et conscientiam **generis** humani aboleri arbitrabantur, ... (Obviously, they were reasoning that in that fire the voice of the Roman people and the freedom of the Senate and the moral-awareness **of the human race** was being destroyed, ...).

³⁰ *Partitive Genitive* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.11: plūs in ōrātiōne tālī dignitātis quam fideī erat (there was more of dignity than of faithfulness in such an oration). Tac. *Ann.* 1.4: igitur versō cīvītātis statū nihil usquam priscī et integrī mōris (therefore, with the condition of the state having been overthrown, there was nothing whatever of the ancient and uncorrupted practice).

³¹ *Objective Genitive* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.7: nam Tiberius cuncta per consulēs incipiēbat tamquam vetere rē publicā et ambiguus imperandī: (For Tiberius was beginning everything through the consuls as if in the old-time Republic and doubtful of ruling). Tac. *Ann.* 12.7.14: cupīdō aurī immensa obtentum habēbat, quasi subsidium regnō parārētur (an unmeasured desire of gold was having a pretext, as if it were being obtained as a support for his kingdom).

³² *Genitive of Description* - Tac. *Ann.* 5.1: Iulia Augusta mortem obiit, aetāte extrēmā, nōbilitātis per Claudiam familiam et adoptiōne Līviōrum Iūliōrumque clārissimae (Iulia Augusta went to death, in extreme age, a woman of the most famous nobility through the Claudian family and by the adoption of the Livii and the Iulii).

³³ *Genitive of Characteristic* - Tac. *Germ.* 6: cēdere locō, dummodo rursus instēs, consiliū quam formīdinis arbitrantur (They consider that to withdraw from a place, for however long you once more press them, is characteristic of strategy rather than characteristic of fear).

Diodorus is not (worth) a hair.)³⁴ Contrast the *Genitive of Value* with the *Ablative of Price*, which gives the exact price by which something was acquired.³⁵

VII. **Genitive of Material:** Describes content or material from which the limited substantive is composed: e.g. Anulus Lydiae auri est. (The ring of Lydia is of gold.)³⁶

VIII. **Genitive of the Charge:** Denotes the charge for which someone is prosecuted and typically occurs with verbal forms associated with the judicial process: e.g. Mārcus māiestātis damnātus est. (Marcus was convicted of treason.)³⁷

IX. The *Genitive* case is habitually construed (placed together syntactically) with some verbs and adjectives in specific usages: e.g. Iūlius Mārci oblīvīscitur. (Iulius is forgetful of Marcus. [or] Iulius forgets Marcus. [*Objective Genitive*]) Mārcus plēnus insidiarum est. (Marcus is full of plots. [*Genitive of Material*]) These usages are particular instances of the named *Genitive* usages above.

2.7 DATIVE: The Latin *Dative* case functions as an adverbial modifier and continues the semantic function of the PIE *Dative* (indirect association). In most instances it can be loosely translated with: “to” or “for.”

- I. **Indirect Object:** Many transitive verbal forms take an *Indirect Object* to indicate the thing indirectly affected by their action: e.g. Aemilia Iuliō osculum dat. (Aemilia gives a kiss to Iulius.) There will often be a *Direct Object* in the *accusative* as well, as in the case of [osculum] in the example.³⁸
- II. **Dative of Interest:** Expresses for whose benefit (*Dative of Advantage*) or harm (*Dative of Disadvantage*) a thing exists or is done: e.g. Brutus Caesarem populō Rōmānō necat. (Brutus is killing Caesar for [the benefit of] the Roman people.) Aemilia, cui Iūlius ornamentum emit, laeta est. (Aemilia, for [the benefit of] whom Iulius buys the ornament, is happy.) Fur dominō eōrum trēs servōs necāvit. (The thief killed three slaves to [the harm of] the master of them.)³⁹ Context (sometimes within a passage rather than an individual sentence) will determine which is indicated.

³⁴ *Genitive of Value* – Juv. *Sat.* 7.175-77: ... tempta / Chrysogonus quanti doceat uel Pollio quanti / lautorum pueros, artem scindes Theodori. (... test / of how much Chrysogonus or of how much Pollio teaches / the sons of the well-washed, you will rip up the manual of Theodorus).

³⁵ The *Genitive of Value* indicates roughly of what quality something is, much like a *Genitive of Material* adjectivally indicates from what material something is made.

³⁶ *Genitive of Material* – Tac. *Germ.* 46.3: sōlae in sagittīs spēs, quās inopiā ferrī ossibus asperant (the only hopes in the arrows, which due to a lack of iron they were sharpening with bones).

³⁷ *Genitive of the Charge* – Tac. *Hist.* 1.1: quippe adūlātiōnī foedum crīmen servitūtis, malignitātī falsa speciēs libertātis inest (certainly the vile crime of slavishness is present in adulation, and the false appearance of freedom is present in malice), Tac. *Ann.* 1.21: adcurritur ab ūniversīs, et carcere effractō solvunt vincula dēsertōrēsque ac rērum capitālīum damnātōs sibi iam miscent (there was a running up by everyone, and with the jail broken open they released the bonds and mixed the deserter and those convicted of capital matters with themselves at once).

³⁸ *Indirect Object* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.7: sed dēfunctō Augustō signum praetōriīs cohortibus ut imperātor dederat; (but with Augustus dead he had given the sign to the praetorian cohorts, like an emperor). Tac. *Ann.* 1.5: quod Maximum uxorī Marciae aperuisse, illam Līviae (which Maximus revealed to his wife Marcia, and she to Livia).

³⁹ *Dative of Interest* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.19: adclāmāvēre ut fīlius Blaesi tribūnus lēgātiōne eā fūngeretur peteretque militibus missiōnem ab sēdecim annīs (They shouted out that the son of Blaesus – the Tribune – should execute to mission and should seek a discharge for the soldiers after sixteen years); Tac. *Ann.* 1.5: audītōs in funere eius Marciae gemitūs sēmet incūsantis quod causa exitiī maritō fuisset (the groans of Marcia were heard at his funeral accusing herself, because she had been the cause of death for her husband).

- A. **Dative of Possession:** A subset of the *Dative of Interest* that indicates for whose benefit something exists, construed with a *Subject Nominative* (or a *Subject Accusative*) and a form of [*esse*] in its clause: e.g. *Mārcō pater pecūniōsus est.* (For Marcus there is a rich father. [or] Marcus has a rich father.) *Puer, cui nōmen Mārcus est, ad lūdum it.* (The boy, whose name is Marcus, goes to school. [or] The boy, for whom there is the name Marcus, goes to school.)⁴⁰ Although it is often translated as if the dative noun were made possessive in sense, this usage is not equivalent to a *Genitive of Possession*.
- III. **Dative of Reference:** Indicates for whom (or from whose perspective) an adjective or a statement is true, implying that the idea is not universally true, but only for ones listed in the *Dative of Reference*: e.g. *Mārcō mentīrī bonus mōs est.* (To lie is a good habit to Marcus [as far as Marcus is concerned].)⁴¹ The *Dative of Reference* *Mārcō* modifies the adjective *bonus* to show in reference to whom the adjective is true. The *Dative of Reference* can frequently be attracted by verbal forms that express a relationship, especially compound verbs: e.g. [*praefaciō, suppōnō*].⁴² The *Ethical Dative* is a subset of the *Dative of Reference*, using personal pronouns in the *dative*.
- A. **Dative of Agent:** A subset of the *Dative of Reference* that indicates the agent by whom the verbal force of a *gerundive* (verbal adjective) must be performed: e.g. *Mārcō Quīntus pulsandus erat.* (Quintus was needing to be hit by Marcus.)⁴³ The *Dative of Agent* may also occasionally be used with perfect passive participles (and passive perfect-system verbs); in poetry, it can be found with any passive verbal form, although such usages are still rare.
- IV. **Dative of Purpose:** Denotes the purpose for which something serves and is usually construed with a form of [*esse*]. Frequently found with the *Dative of Interest* in the **Double Dative** construction: e.g. *Stylus Mārcō tēlō erat.* (The stylus was as a weapon [purpose] for Marcus [interest].)⁴⁴

⁴⁰ *Dative of Possession* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.22: Flāgrantiōr inde vīs, plurēs *seditionī* ducēs (then the violence was more flagrant, for the *sedition* there were more leaders [or] the *sedition* had more leaders); Tac. *Ann.* 1.17: nē *dimissīs* quidem finem esse militiae (not even for those having been discharged was there an end of military service [or] *not even* those having been discharged had an end of military service); Tac. *Ann.* 1.11: at patrēs, *quibus* ūnus metus sī intellegere vidērentur, in questūs lācrimās vōta effundī (but the Fathers, for whom the one fear was if they should seem to understand, were poured forth into complaints, tears, and vows [or] ... , whose one fear was if they should seem to understand, ...).

⁴¹ *Dative of Reference* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.12: dein collectō animō rēpondit nēquāquam decōrum *pudōrī* suō legere aliquid ... (next with his mind collected, he replied that in no way was it seemly to his *modesty* to pick something ...); Tac. *Ann.* 1.4: trucem Agrippam et ignōminiā accensum nōn aetāte neque rērum experiētiā tantae *mōlī* pārem (that Agrippa was savage and enraged due to maltreatment and neither a match for such a *burden* in age nor in the experience of matters); Tac. *Ann.* 1.11: quam subiectum *Fortūnae* regendī cuncta onus (how subjected to *Fortuna* the burden of ruling all things was); Tac. *Ann.* 1.8: cum occīsus dictator Caesar *aliīs* pessimum *aliīs* pulcherrimum facinus vidēretur (when the dictator Caesar having been killed was seeming to be the worst deed to some and the most beautiful to others).

⁴² *Dative of Reference* – Caes. *Gall.* 1.10: Ob eas causas ei *munitiōi* quam fecerat T. Labienum legatum praeficit; (On account of these reasons he made T. Labienus – as a legate - in charge of the *fortification* which he had made;)

⁴³ *Dative of Agent* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.8: *auxiliō* scilicet militārī tuendum, ut sepultūra eius quiēta foret (that obviously he needed to be guarded by military *assistance*, so that his burial would be peaceful). Tac. *Ann.* 1.12: ut suā confessiōne arguerētur ūnum esse reī publicae corpus atque ūnūs *animō* regendum (so that it would be proven by his own confession that the body of the Republic was one and that it had to be ruled by the *mind* of one men).

⁴⁴ *Dative of Purpose* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.8: die funeris milites velut *praesidio* stetēre, ... (on the day of the funeral, soldiers stood as if for a *defense*, ...). Tac. *Ann.* 1.9: dicēbātur contrā, pietātem ergā parentem et tempora reī publicae *obtentui* sumpta (it was being said on the other side that piety toward his father and the times of the republic had been taken up for an *excuse*); Tac. *Hist.* 2.1: quod variā sorte laetum reī publicae aut ātrox, ipsīs principibus prosperum vel exitiō fuit (which by various lot was happy or dreadful for the Republic, prosperous or ruin for the *principes* themselves).

- V. The *Dative* case is habitually construed with certain (primarily intransitive) verbs, such as *imperō* and *cōnfidō* and certain adjectives: e.g. Mārcus Iūliō paret. (Marcus renders obedience to Iulius. [or] Marcus obeys Iulius. [*Dative of Interest*]) Mārcus inimīcus magistrīs est. (Marcus is hateful to teachers [*Dative of Reference*].) These usages are particular instances of the named *Dative* usages above, often the *Dative of Interest* or the *Dative of Reference*.

2.8 ACCUSATIVE: The Latin *Accusative* case functions as an adverbial modifier and continues the semantic functions of the PIE *Accusative* (object of verbal action or direction of orientation/motion).

- I. **Direct Object:** Transitive verbal forms (*Active* or *Deponent*) can attract a *Direct Object* to indicate the thing directly affected by their action: e.g. Mārcus Quīntum pulsāt. (Marcus hits Quintus.) Quīntus, quem Mārcus pulsāt, probus est. (Quintus, whom Marcus hits, is morally upright.)⁴⁵
- II. **Internal Object:** Some transitive verbal forms are able to be construed with two *accusative* objects, one a *Direct Object* and the other an *Internal Object* indicating an additional object of the verbal force: e.g. ille magister Mārcum artem dicendī docēbat. (That teacher was teaching Marcus the art of speaking.) While Mārcum is the *Direct Object* (external object) of the verb docēbat, artem is the *Internal Object* of docēbat. Note that when such a verb is made *Passive*, it can often still take an *Internal Object*: e.g. āb illō magistrō Mārcus artem dicendī docēbatur. (Marcus was being taught the art of speaking by that teacher.)⁴⁶ The fact that Mārcus becomes *nominative* but artem does not is indicative of the fact that an *Internal Object* is syntactically distinct from a *Direct Object*, which is normally a person. This construction is also seen in verbs like *iubēre*, which attracts a personal *Direct Object* and normally an infinitive as its *Internal Object*.
- III. **Predicate Accusative:** Some transitive verbal forms (*Active* or *Deponent*) are able to be construed with two accusatives, one a *Direct Object* and the other a *Predicate Accusative* indicating the thing into which the *Direct Object* is transformed: e.g. Mārcus Quīntum consulem facit. (Marcus makes Quintus a consul.)⁴⁷ While Quīntum is the *Direct Object* of the verb facit, consulem is the *Predicate Accusative* indicating what Quīntum was made. (This usage is also termed an *Object Compliment*.) The *Predicate Accusative* also occurs within *Indirect Statement* with a copulative verb: e.g. Mārcus Iūliam puellam stultam esse putat. (Marcus thinks that Iulia is a stupid girl.)
- IV. **Subject Accusative:** An *accusative* can function as the *Subject* of an infinitive⁴⁸, primarily within *Indirect Statement* set up by a verbal form of thinking, saying, or feeling: e.g. Mārcus Iūliam puellam

⁴⁵ *Direct Object* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.18.11: aut incolumis fidem legiōnum retinēbō aut iugulātus paenitentiam adcelerābō (I, unharmed, will either retain the fidelity of the legions, or with a slit throat I will hasten their repentance).

⁴⁶ *Internal Object* – Tac. *Ann.* 3.68.5: tum L. Pisōnem sententiam rogāt. (then he asks L. Piso his opinion). Tac. *Hist.* 4.41.3: ... ceterī, ut sententiam rogābantur, deōs testīs advocābant, ... (... others, as they were being asked their opinion, were calling the gods as witnesses, ...). Tac. *Germ.* 6.3.3: sed nec variāre gŷrōs in mōrem nostrum docentur: (but they are not taught to vary their evolutions toward our manner:).

⁴⁷ *Predicate Accusative* – Tac. *Germ.* 2: Ipsōs Germānōs indigenās crēdiderim (I might have believed that the Germans themselves are natives); Tac. *Ann.* 1.8: cuius testamentum inlatum per virginēs Vestae Tiberium et Liviam heredēs habuit (whose will, brought in through the Virgins of Vesta, had Tiberius and Livia as heirs); Tac. *Ann.* 1.8: quōsdam ipsī manipulī documentum fideī trādidēre (the maniples themselves handed over some men as a proof of their faith).

⁴⁸ In *Indirect Statement*, the infinitive [esse] is frequently omitted from periphrastic infinitive forms, leaving only the *Perfect* passive participles (e.g. *amātum* in place of *amātum esse*), *Future* active participles (e.g. *amātūrum* in place of *amātūrum esse*), or Gerundives (e.g. *amandum* in place of *amandum esse*).

stultam esse putat. (Marcus thinks that Iulia is a stupid girl.)⁴⁹ A clause in *Indirect Statement* is a nominal clause and most frequently functions as the *Direct Object* (or *Subject*) of the verbal form that initiates it; in the example, the *Direct Object* of *putat* is not *Iūliam*, it is the *Indirect Statement* Iūliam puellam stultam esse. A nominal clause may also function as the *Subject* of an impersonal construction: e.g. puerum probum esse oportet. (that [a] boy be proper is appropriate).

- V. **Accusative of Orientation:** (aka *Accusative of End of Motion*, *Accusative of the Goal*) Expresses orientation towards something, with or without a preposition [*ad* , *in* , *ad* , *ante* , *et cētera*]; the *Accusative of Orientation* itself does not convey any sense of motion, only orientation toward something. When modifying a verb implying motion, it indicates the end point of motion toward which the subject travels: e.g. Mēdus Rōmam it. (Medus goes [to] Rome.)⁵⁰ The names of cities and islands do not typically take a preposition, nor do [*domum*] or [*rūs*]. Note that when construed with an *accusative* [*ad*] means *toward* or *beside*, while [*in*] means *into*. The *Accusative of Orientation* can indicate purpose, especially when the *accusative* form is a supine, a gerund, or is modified by a gerundive: e.g. omnēs Caesarem salutātum vērunt. (They all came in order to greet Caesar); omnēs ad Caesarem salutāndum vērunt. (They all came in order to greet Caesar.) Despite similarities in the English translation, this usage is not equivalent to a *Purpose Clause* in Latin.
- VI. **Accusative of Extent (of Time or of Space):** Denotes the amount of time or of space across which an action is carried: e.g. [TIME] Iūlius duās hōrās ad Mārcum clamāvit. (Iulius yelled at Marcus for two hours.)⁵¹ Note that, unlike the *Ablative of Location in Time* that indicates a discreet event within a specified time, the *Accusative of Extent of Time* indicates that the event occurred continuously throughout the specified time. [SPACE] Iūlius decem mīllia passuum in viā Latīnā ambulāvit. (Iulius walked on the Latin way for ten thousand of paces.)⁵² The prepositions [*per* , *trans* , *et cētera*] may be construed with either usage.
- VIII. **Accusative of Respect:** While this usage of the *Accusative* is functionally similar to the *Ablative of Respect*, the *Accusative of Respect* is found predominantly in poetry and denotes in respect to what (frequently a body part) an adjective, passive, or intransitive form applies:⁵³ e.g. Mārcus pedem aeger est.

⁴⁹ *Subject Accusative* – Tac. Ann. 1.13: fessusque clamōre omnium, expostulātiōne singulōrum flexit paulatim, non ut fatērētur suscipi ā sē imperium, sed ut negāre et rogārī dēsineret (and worn out by the clamor of everyone, by the complaint of each individual he bent little by little, not so that he would confess that the Imperium was being taken up by himself, but so that he would cease to be asked and to refuse).

⁵⁰ *Accusative of the Orientation* – Tac. Ann. 1.7: mīles in Forum, mīles in Cūriam comitābātur (the soldiery was accompanying him into the Forum, the soldiery was accompanying him into the Curia). Tac. Ann. 1.7: Postēā cognitum est ad intrōspiciendās etiam prōcērū voluntātēs indūctam dubitātiōnem: nam verba vultūs in crīmen dētorquēs recondēbat (afterwards it was recognized that the hesitation was also drawn out for the desires of the nobles needing to be looked into; for, twisting their words and expressions into a crime, he was storing them up).

⁵¹ *Accusative of Extent of Time* – Tac. Ann. 1.9: continuata per septem et triginta annos tribunicia potestas, ... (tribunician power extended through thirty-seven years, ...).

⁵² *Accusative of Extent of Space* – Tac. Ann. 1.2: cum ferōcissimī per aciēs aut prōscriptiōne cecidissent (since the most fierce men had fallen throughout the battle lines or due to a proscription).

⁵³ The *Accusative of Respect* is sometimes called the “Greek Accusative,” due to the fact that it is usually a poetic affectation of a Classical Greek case usage.

(Marcus is sick [with respect to] the foot.) Sextus frontem pulsātus est. (Sextus was struck [in] the forehead [with respect to the forehead].)⁵⁴

- IX. **Adverbial Accusative:** While the *Adverbial Accusative* is used much like a regular adverb⁵⁵ to modify a verbal form or an adjective, it is not morphologically an adverb: e.g. Mārcus dulce loquitur. (Marcus is speaking sweet(ly).) Sextus multum pulsātus est. (Sextus was struck much.)⁵⁶
- X. **Accusative of Exclamation:** Used in exclamations that are grammatically separate from the sentence: e.g. Pacuvius, *Frag.* 264: heu mē miserum, excrucior! (Alas miserable me, I am being tortured!)⁵⁷
- XI. A number of prepositions are habitually construed with *Accusative* case⁵⁸ [ad, ante, apud, circum, extrā, inter, ob, post, prope, trāns et cētera multa]: e.g. Mēdus prope Rōmam est. (Medus is near Rome. [*Accusative of Orientation*]) These usages are particular instances of the named *accusative* usages above, frequently the *Accusative of Orientation* or the *Accusative of Extent*.

2.9 ABLATIVE: The Latin *Ablative* case functions as an adverbial modifier and encompasses the semantic functions of the PIE *Ablative* (origin of motion or action), PIE *Locative* (place where in space or time), and PIE *Instrumental* (means by which something is done). In most instances it can be loosely translated with: “from,” “in,” “with,” or “by.”

- I. **Ablative of Orientation:** (aka *Ablative of Place from Which*) expresses the orientation away from or position apart from something; the *Ablative of Orientation* itself does not convey any sense of motion, only orientation away from something. When modifying a verb implying motion, it indicates the origin of motion from which the subject travels, often with [ā , ab , dē , ex , et cētera]. Cities, islands, [domō], and [rūre] are not typically construed with a preposition: e.g. Mēdus Rōmā Tusculum it. (Medus goes from Rome to Tusculum.)⁵⁹

- A. **Ablative of Separation:** as a subset of the *Ablative of Orientation* (without a verb of motion), the *Ablative of Separation* indicates that one thing stands apart, often figuratively, from another. Found

⁵⁴ *Accusative of Respect* – Prop. 2.18.23-24: Nunc etiam infectos demens imitare Britannos, / ludis et externo tincta nitore caput? (Now you – out of your mind – even imitate the tinted Britons, and you frolic – dyed in respect to your head with a foreign gleam?). Tac. *Agric.* 16.2: ... ne quamquam egregius cetera adroganter in deditos et ut suae cuiusque iniuriae ultor durius consuleret (... lest a man, although outstanding in respect to other matters, take thought against those having been surrendered arrogantly and too harshly - as if he were an avenger of each injury of his own).

⁵⁵ Adverbial forms that appear to be morphologically *Accusative* are usually fossilized instances of the *Adverbial Accusative* usage in the neuter: [multum, facile, primum, et cētera]. The comparative adverb is a typical instance of this practice, being an *Accusative*, singular, neuter of the comparative adjective.

⁵⁶ *Adverbial Accusative* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.13: Post quae L. Arruntius haud multum discrepāns ā Gallī ōrātiōne perinde offendit, ... (After which things, L. Arruntius hardly differing much from the speech of Gallus equally offended, ...).

⁵⁷ *Accusative of Exclamation* – Lucil. *Sat.* 1.9: O curas hominū! (Oh the cares of humans!). Plaut. *Men.* 640-641: O hominem malum, / ut dissimulat (Oh evil human, / how he dissembles!).

⁵⁸ Four prepositions [in, sub, subter, super] are construed with the *Accusative* with a verb of motion expressing motion into or towards, while being construed with the *Ablative* when merely expressing position or location.

⁵⁹ *Ablative of Orientation* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.15: sed dēcrēta pecūnia ex aerariō (but money was decreed from the Treasury); Tac. *Ann.* 1.1: urbem Rōmam ā principiō rēgēs habuēre (kings held the city Roma from the beginning).

with specific verbs [*liberō, solvō, careō, prohibeō, et cētera*], adjectives [*liber, vacuus, et cētera*], and the preposition [*sine*]: e.g. *Mārcus vacuus probitāte est.* (Marcus is free from righteousness).⁶⁰

- II. **Ablative of Cause:** The *Ablative of Cause* gives the impersonal source of an event or an effect, explaining the cause of some situation. Unlike the *Ablative of Agent*, this usage is not normally construed with the preposition [*ā, ab*]: e.g. *Mārcus īrā ardet.* (Marcus is on fire due to rage).⁶¹
- III. **Ablative of Agent:** found with passive verbs or verbal forms [e.g. *amātur, amātus, et cētera*] and typically preceded by [*ā, ab*] expresses the agent by whom the action of the passive verb was accomplished: e.g. *Iūlius ā Mārcō pulsātur.* (Iulius is hit by Marcus).⁶² *Notā bene:* *Mārcō* is not the *Subject* of the passive verb *pulsātur*. Unlike the other passive verbal forms, the *gerundive* is typically construed with the *Dative of Agent*.
- IV. **Ablative Absolute:** usually a noun being modified by a participle,⁶³ both in the *ablative* case and somewhat separated grammatically (*absolūtum*) from the main thought of the sentence. The *Subject* of the *main clause* is not involved in the action of the *Ablative Absolute*: e.g. *Sōle oriente, Mārcus ad lūdum it.* (With the sun rising, Marcus goes to school.) The *Ablative Absolute* comprises a circumstantial participle phrase that may take the place of a number of dependent clauses⁶⁴ and is quite common.
- V. **Ablative of Comparison:** found with comparative constructions, especially comparative adjectives and adverbs, to give a point of reference: e.g. *Mārcus pigrior Quīntō est.* (Marcus is lazier than Quintus).⁶⁵
- VI. **Ablative of Location (in Time or Space):** (aka *Ablative of the Place Where/ Ablative of the Time at Which*) Indicates the location in time or space where an event or action takes place; no motion in space or extent of time is implied: e.g. [TIME] *Nonā horā Mārcus ā lūdō redit.* (At the ninth hour, Marcus returns from school.)⁶⁶ Note that, unlike the *Accusative of Extent of Time* that indicates that the event occurred continuously throughout the specified time, the *Ablative of Location in Time* indicates that a discreet event occurred at some point within a specified time (typically without a preposition). [SPACE] *Tusculō lūdus*

⁶⁰ *Ablative of Separation* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.15: neque populus ademptum iūs questus est nisi inanī rūmōre, et senātus largitiōnibus ac precibus sordidīs exsolūtus libēns tenuit, ... (and the populace did not bemoan the taken-away right unless in empty rumor, and the Senate held it willingly, released from bribes and filthy entreaties...).

⁶¹ *Ablative of Cause* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.6: propius vērō Tiberium ac Līviam, illum metū, hanc novercālibus odiīs, suspectī et invīsī iuvenis caedem festināvisse (closer to the truth thing that Tiberius and Livia, the former due to fear, the latter due to step-motherly hatreds, hastened the slaughter of the suspected and hated youth).

⁶² *Ablative of Agent* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.8: interrogātusque ā Tiberiō num sē mandante eam sententiam prompsisset, sponte dixisse rēpondit, ... (Having been asked by Tiberius, whether he had put forth that opinion with him ordering it, he replied that he had spoken by his own will, ...).

⁶³ Since the verb [*esse*] did not have a participle in use during the period of Classical Latin, any *Ablative Absolute* that would have used such a participle has none: *Diodorō magistrō Mārcus īre ad lūdus nōn vult.* (With Diodorus (being) the teacher, Marcus does not want to go to school.) An *Ablative Absolute* phrase may be composed of just a participle functioning substantively: Tac. *Hist.* 4.1: passim trucidātīs (with people having been slaughtered everywhere), or may contain multiple objects of the participle or other modifiers: Tac. *Ann.* 1.2: suspectō senātus populīque imperiō ob certāmina potentium et avāritiam magistrātuum (with the imperium of the senate and the people having been suspected on account of the contests of the powerful men and the avarice of the magistrates).

⁶⁴ The *Ablative Absolute* may take the place of a conditional protasis, a temporal clause, a causal clause, or a concessive clause.

⁶⁵ *Ablative of Comparison* - Catul. *Car.* 14-16: cui cum sit viridissimo / nupta flore puella / (et puella tenellulo / delicatior haedo, / asservanda nigerrimis / diligentius uvīs) / ... (although there is a girl wedded in the greenest flower for whom / and a girl more delicate than a tender little kid, a girl to be guarded more diligently than the darkest grapes / ...).

⁶⁶ *Ablative of Location in Time* - Tac. *Ann.* 1.3: bellum eā tempestatē nullum nisi adversus Germānōs supererat, ... (not any war was remaining at that time, unless against the Germans, ...).

Mārcī est. (In Tusculum is the school of Marcus.)⁶⁷ Cities, islands, [domō], [rūre], and a few other forms do not typically take a preposition and often use the *Locative* case rather than the *Ablative of Location*. Other forms are often construed with the prepositions [in, sub, et cētera].

- VII. **Ablative of Respect:** While this usage of the *Ablative* is functionally similar to the *Accusative of Respect*, the *Ablative of Respect* is found in both poetry and prose and denotes in respect to what factor an adjective or an assertion (active or passive) holds true: e.g. Mārcus mōribus improbus est. (Marcus is wicked in respect to habits.)⁶⁸ The *Ablative of Respect* adverbially limits the range of the adjective [improbus], meaning that Marcus may not be [improbus] in respect to other possible factors.
- VII. **Ablative of Accompaniment:** Indicates with whom an event or an action occurs, using the preposition [cum]: Iūlius cum Mārcō ambulābat. (Julius was walking with Marcus.)⁶⁹
- IX. **Ablative of Description:** Typically an *ablative* noun modified by an adjective which together describe another noun which they modify: e.g. Mārcus puer mente improbō est. (Marcus is a boy with a wicked mind.)⁷⁰ The *Ablative of Description* is functionally similar to the *Genitive of Description*.
- X. **Instrumental Ablative:** Unlike the *Ablative of Agent*, the *Instrumental Ablative* is found with both active and passive verbs, and it is not construed with [ā , ab]. Some intransitive, deponent verbs [utor, fruor, fungor, vēscor, et cētera] are typically construed with the *Instrumental Ablative*.
- A. **Ablative of Means:** A subset of the *Instrumental Ablative* that simply expresses the means (or tool) by which an action was accomplished: e.g. Iūlius Mēdum baculō pulsāt. (Iulius hits Medus with a stick.)⁷¹ Contrast the instrumentality of the *Ablative of Means* with the explanatory nature of the *Ablative of Cause*, which shows from what source an outcome resulted.
- B. **Ablative of Manner:** A subset of the *Instrumental Ablative* that typically combined with an adjective or construed with [cum, sine], the *Instrumental Ablative* also expresses the manner in which the action of the verb is carried out; it is: e.g. Iūlius Mārcum magnā cum irā verberat. (Iulius

⁶⁷ *Ablative of Location in Space* - Tac. Ann. 1.7: litterās ad exercitūs tamquam adeptō principātū mīsit, nusquam cunctābundus nisi cum in senātū loqueretur (He send letters to the armies as if with the principate having been obtained, never hesitant unless he was speaking in the Senate).

⁶⁸ *Ablative of Respect* - Tac. Ann. 1.4: truce[m] Agrippam et ignōminiā accensum nōn etate neque rerum experientiā tantae mōlī pārem, Tiberium Nerōnem mātūrum annīs, spectātum bellō, sed vetere atque insitā Claudia[e] familiae superbiā (that Agrippa was savage and enraged due to maltreatment and neither a match for such a burden in age nor in the experience of matters, that Ti. Nero was mature in years, had been seen in war, but with the ancient and inborn arrogance of the Claudian family).

⁶⁹ *Ablative of Accompaniment* - Tac. Ann. 1.3: abolendae magis infāmie ob āmissum cum Quintiliō Vārō exercitum quam cupīdine prōferendī imperiī aut dignum ob prae[m]ium (more of infamy needing to be erased on account of the army lost with Quintus Varus than due to lust of the Imperium needing to be carried forward or on account of a worthy reward).

⁷⁰ *Ablative of Description* - Tac. Ann. 1.7: verba edicti fuere pauca et sensu permodesto (The words of the edict were few and with a quite moderate sentiment); Tac. Ann. 1.4: Tiberium Nerōnem mātūrum annīs, spectātum bellō, sed vetere atque insitā Claudia[e] familiae superbiā (that Ti. Nero was mature in years, had been seen in war, but with the ancient and inborn arrogance of the Claudian family).

⁷¹ *Ablative of Means* - Tac. Ann. 1.2: ubī militem dōnīs, populum annōnā, cunctōs dulcēdine ōtiī pellexit (when he enticed the soldiery by gifts, the populace by the grain dole, everyone by the sweetness of leisure); Tac. Ann. 1.9: mari Oceano aut amnibus longinquis saeptum imperium (that the *imperium* was fenced by the Ocean sea or by far-off rivers); Tac. Ann. 1.8: populumque ēdictō monuit (he warned the populace by an edict).

beats Marcus with great rage.)⁷² The difference between the *Ablative of Manner* and the *Ablative of Means* is sometimes more semantic in nature than syntactic.

- C. **Ablative of Price:** A subset of the *Instrumental Ablative* that gives the (exact) price for which a thing was bought or sold: e.g. Mēdus anulum aureum nōnāgintā sestertiīs emit. (Medus buys a golden ring for ninety sestertiī.)⁷³ Contrast the adverbial instrumentality of the *Ablative of Price* with the *Genitive of Value*, which adjectivally indicates what something is (roughly) worth.

- XI. **Ablative of Degree of Difference:** Found modifying comparative and superlative constructions, especially comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs, to quantify by how much one thing is greater in some factor than another: e.g. Mārcus multō pigrior Quīntō est. (Marcus is lazier than Quintus by a lot.)⁷⁴ The *Ablative of Degree of Difference* can also modify the comparative ideas expressed in the adverbial usages of [ante] and [post]: e.g. paucīs post diēbus.
- XII. A number of prepositions are habitually construed with the *Ablative* case⁷⁵ [ā (ab, abs, absque), cum, dē, ē (ex), prae, prō, sine, tenus]: e.g. Iūlius sine comite ambulat. (Iulius is walking without a companion. [*Ablative of Separation*]) These usages are particular instances of the named *ablative* usages above, frequently the *Ablative of Location*, the *Ablative of Orientation*, or occasionally the *Ablative of Cause* as are most adverbial forms that appear to be morphologically *Ablative*.⁷⁶ [Cum] acts as an enclitic after *ablative* personal pronouns: [mēcum].

2.10 VOCATIVE: The Latin *Vocative* continues the semantic function of the PIE *Vocative* (object of direct address). The *Vocative* is syntactically separate from the rest of its clause. Note that the *Vocative* cannot function as the *Subject* of a verb, not even of an imperative verb.

- I. Used whenever speaking directly to another person, frequently is quoted *Direct Statement*; typically found in the vicinity⁷⁷ of 2nd person verbs (including imperatives) and often with the interjection [ō]: e.g. Aemilia vocat, “ō Mārce, venī!” (Aemilia calls, “Oh Marcus, come!”) The *vocative* is morphologically identical to the *nominative*, except in the 2nd declension singular masculine in which the [-us] ending becomes [-e] as in [Mārcus > Mārce]. Nouns ending in [-i-us] become [-ī] as in [Iūlius > Iūlī].

⁷² *Ablative of Manner* – Tac. *Hist.* 4.1: armātī per urbem victōrēs implacābilī odiō victōs consecrābantur (the armed victors were chasing the conquered throughout the city with implacable hatred); Tac. *Ann.* 1.1: postquam occiderant recentibus odiīs compositae sunt (after they had died, acts were written with fresh hatreds).

⁷³ *Ablative of Price* – L. Annaeus Seneca Iunior, *Epistulae* 95.42: licitī sunt, vīcit Octāviū et ingentem consecutus est inter suōs glōriam, cum quinque sestertiīs emisset piscem quem Caesar vendiderat, nē Apicius quidem emerat (They made bids, Octavius won and captured huge glory amongst his people, since he had bought a fish for 500,000 sestertiī, which Caesar had sold and not even Apicius had bought).

⁷⁴ *Ablative of Degree of Difference* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.7: quantō quis inlustrior, tantō magis falsī ac festinantēs (to whatever degree someone was more illustrious, to that same degree they were more false and making haste). Tac. *Ann.* 1.4: pars multō maxima imminentīs dominōs variīs rūmōribus differēbant (the part biggest by far was comparing the imminent masters with various rumors).

⁷⁵ Four prepositions [in , sub , subter , super] are construed with the *Accusative* with a verb of motion expressing motion into or towards, while being construed with the *Ablative* when merely expressing position or location.

⁷⁶ Much as with the *Adverbial Accusative*, these adverbial uses are usually fossilized instances of the *Ablative*: e.g. [tūtō , falsō , prīmō , et cētera].

⁷⁷ *Vocative* – Plinius, *Panegyricus*, 1: Bene ac sapienter, patrēs conscriptī, māiōrēs instituērunt ut rērum agendārum ita dīcendī initium ā precātiōnibus capere, ... (Well and wisely, O Conscript Fathers, did the ancestors set it up, as in the case of matters requiring action, just the same to take a beginning of speaking from prayers, ...).

2.11 [LOCATIVE]: The Latin *Locative* continues the semantic function of the PIE *Locative* (place where in space or time), but it was used for a only small number of nouns. Most of the function of the PIE *Locative* case was taken over by the Latin *Ablative of Location*. In most instances it can be loosely translated with: “at,” or “in.”

- I. The *Locative* is morphologically identical to the *genitive* in the 1st/2nd declension singular (to the *ablative* or *dative* when plural or in the 3rd declension) and denotes the *locus* – the place where: e.g. Iulius Tusculi in villā habitat. (Iulius lives in a villa at Tusculum.) *Locative* forms indicating place were in common use only for the names of cities, islands, and [domī , humī , rūri , forīs , mīlitiae , bellī , animī]; *Locative* forms indicating time were [herī , vesperī , temperī].⁷⁸

⁷⁸ *Locative* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.7: at Rōmae ruere in servitium consules, patrēs, equēs. (But at Roma the consuls, Senators, Knights rushed into slavery).

2.12 THE FOUR FORMS OF AGREEMENT:

- I. **Nouns** in the predicate of a copulative sentence (with *esse* or another copulative verb) agree in *case* with the *Subject*; they will agree in *number* if possible (the majority of instances). As most nouns have their own fixed *gender*, agreement in *gender* is more often chance than choice: e.g. Iūlius vir est. (Iulius is a man.) The noun [*vir*] is *nominative* because it must be, singular because it can be, and masculine because it happens to be a masculine noun.
- A. **Apposition**: All of the cases can stand as *appositives* (one substantive form that renames another without modification or a copulative verb) to other words in a sentence. Again, *case* is mandatory, *number* is desirable and likely, and *gender* is determined by the natural gender of the noun in apposition: e.g. Mārcus, improbus puer, Quīntus pulsāt. (Marcus, a wicked boy, hits Quintus.) The noun *puer* is appositive to the noun Mārcus. Quīntus ā Mārco, puerō improbō, pulsātur. (Quintus is hit by Marcus, a wicked boy.) *puerō* is appositive to Mārco.
- B. **Comparison**: Within a clause of comparison with [*quam*], the *case* of a substantive will match that of the substantive with which it is being compared. Mārcus improbius quam Quīntus est. (Marcus is more wicked than Quintus.) Iūlius Quīntō quam Mārco nummōs dare māvult. (Iulius prefers to give coins to Quintus (rather) than to Marcus.)
- II. **Adjectives**, including all participles (verbal adjectives), agree with the noun that they modify in *case*, *number*, and *gender*. Since adjectives (except when acting as substantives) take their case from agreement with the noun they modify, their case should not be explained by any of the above syntactic functions of the cases:⁷⁹ e.g. Iūlius Mēdum baculō magnō pulsāt. (Iulius hits Medus with a big stick.) The adjective *magnō* is not an *Ablative of Manner*; it simply is in agreement with *baculō*, which is an *Ablative of Manner*.
- A. **Substantive Adjectives**: When an adjective functions substantively, its case comes from its usage; e.g. *multī* Iūlium amant. (Many {people} love Iulius.) The adjective *multī* is *nominative* because it is substantive and is the *Subject* of *amant*.
- III. **Relative Pronouns** take their *number* and *gender* from the noun (substantive form) to which they refer, i.e. their *antecedent*; they take their *case* from their syntactic role within their own clause: e.g. Iūlius, quem Aemilia amat, vir eius est. (Iulius, whom Aemilia loves, is her husband.) The relative pronoun *quem* is singular and masculine to agree with its *antecedent* Iūlius, but it is *accusative* because it is the *Direct Object* of the verb *amat* within its own clause.
- IV. **Verbs** agree with their subjects in *number*, and in *person* when personal pronouns are employed: e.g. nōs Iūlium bonum virum esse putāmus. (We think that Iulius is a good man.) The personal pronoun [*nōs*] is 1st person, plural; [*putāmus*] is thus 1st person, plural as well. exercitūs Rōmānī fortēs erant. (The Roman armies were brave.) *exercitūs* is plural; *erant* is plural.

⁷⁹ Both a participle and its modified noun, however, form an *Ablative Absolute* construction.

SECTION III: MOOD AND SUBORDINATION

3.1 COORDINATION/SUBORDINATION: The precise semantic force of a particular verbal form derives from the syntax⁸⁰ of the construction within which it is found. A single idea expressed in a grammatically complete manner constitutes a simple sentence: i.e. an *Independent Clause*. Within a sentence that is composed of more than a single idea, there are two structural ways that the related ideas can be linked:

- A. **Coordination:** Clauses may be linked with coordinating conjunctions [et , atque , sed , vel , aut , nam , -que, neque , et cētera] or simply juxtaposed⁸¹ to indicate a roughly equal level of significance: e.g. Caesar trans fluvium Rubicōnem it, **et** inimīcī eum metuunt. (Caesar is coming across the river Rubicon, **and** the enemies fear him.) In this instance, no differential relationship is being asserted between the two statements, each of which happens to be an *Independent Clause*.
- B. **Subordination:** Clauses of unequal significance, where one idea is made subordinate to another, may be linked with subordinating conjunctions or particles [ut , sī , quia , quī , cum, ubi, quamvīs , quandō , et cētera]: e.g. Caesar trans fluvium Rubicōnem it, **ut** inimīcī eum metuant. (Caesar is coming across the river Rubicon, **so that** the enemies would fear him.) The *Dependent Clause*⁸² [**ut** inimīcī eum metuat] is subordinated to its *Main Clause* [Caesar trans fluvium Rubicōnem it], which happens to also be an *Independent Clause*. Through subordination, the idea of the *Dependent Clause* contributes to the meaning of the *Main Clause* by modifying one of the words within that clause.

3.2 SYNTAX OF VERBAL FORMS: For verbs in the *Subjunctive* mood, the construction within which they occur is particularly crucial to their exact meaning (semantic force). Whenever a *Subjunctive* is employed, a semantic or syntactic meaning beyond simple, direct statement of fact is intended.

Subjunctive Mood: The *Subjunctive* is the verbal mood (*modus*) of potentiality, modality, and unreality. Unlike the *Indicative*, which indicates fact, the *Subjunctive* often refers to what should or might be.

Similarly, the meanings of infinitives (verbal nouns) and participles (verbal adjectives) are derived to a great extent from the specific context and type of clause in which they are found.

Infinitives: The tense of an *Infinitive* typically shows *aspect* (incomplete or completed), but the tense shows *relative time* (prior, simultaneous, subsequent) in *Indirect Statement*.

Participles: The tense of a *Participle* shows *aspect* or *relative time*, depending on the construction.

⁸⁰ Arrangement of one clause beside [παρά] another is sometimes termed *Parataxis* (Coordination), resulting in a compound sentence. On the other hand, arrangement of one clause beneath [ὑπό] another is termed *Hypotaxis* (Subordination), resulting in a complex sentence..

⁸¹ The practice of juxtaposing simple sentences without coordinating conjunctions is termed *Asyndeton* [α- + σύν + δέω].

⁸² Rather than being able to stand by itself as a complete idea, a *Dependent Clause* is syntactically subordinate to another clause, termed a *Main Clause*; the *Dependent Clause* merely gives additional information about the action of its *Main Clause*, which may come before or after the *Dependent Clause*. Note that the *Main Clause* may itself be an *Independent Clause*, or it may be subordinate in turn to another clause.

3.3 INDEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE USAGES: When found as the verb of an *Independent Clause*, a *Subjunctive* verb is expressing one of four independent usages. Identification of the usage must often be made from the sense of the sentence. Within most types of *Independent Clause*, an *Indicative* verb has no special semantic force beyond to indicate what is factual.

- A. **HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE:** [Let's do it! You should not do it!] The *Hortatory Subjunctive* (iussive subjunctive) is employed to exhort the hearers to perform an action: e.g. Necēmus Caesarem! (Let's kill Caesar!)⁸³ [As an exhortation designed to persuade the audience toward an action, the *Hortatory Subjunctive* is weaker (more polite or optional) than a command expressed in the *Imperative* mood.]
- B. **DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE:** [What should (ought) we do?] The *Deliberative Subjunctive* is employed to deliberate whether or not an action ought to be taken. The deliberative usage is typically found with question words [num, -ne, quomodo, cur, et cētera]: e.g. Num Caesarem necēmus? (Should we kill Caesar?)⁸⁴
- C. **POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE:** [It might (could) happen.] The *Potential Subjunctive* is employed to express the possibility that some event could occur or some statement could be true: e.g. Caesar necētur. Caesar might be killed. [By contrast, the real ability to perform a specified action is expressed by a conjugated form of "posse" and a complementary infinitive: e.g. Caesar necārī potest. (Caesar is able to be killed.)⁸⁵
- D. **OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE:** [May it happen! O that it might happen! If only it would happen!] The *Optative Subjunctive* is employed to express a wish on the part of the speaker, and it will often be signaled by [utinam, utinam nē/nōn, ut/utī]. A wish may also be expressed using a *protasis* [sī modo, ō sī] without an *apodosis*. The statement may be in the form of an address to an audience, but for the *Optative Subjunctive* there is no intent to persuade anyone toward an action: e.g. (Utinam) regat Caesar! (May Caesar rule!)⁸⁶

3.4 DEPENDENT USAGES: *Dependent Clauses* fall into three major categories: those that function like adjectives (*Adjectival Clauses*), those that function like adverbs (*Adverbial Clauses*), and those that function like nouns (*Nominal Clauses*).⁸⁷ The meaning of verbs, participles, and infinitives found within *Dependent*

⁸³ *Hortatory Subjunctive* – Tac. *Agricola* 31: nōs integrī et indomitī et in lībertātem, nōn in paenitentiam bellātūrī; prīmō statim congressū ostendāmus, quōs sibi Calēdonia virōs sēposuerit. (we are undamaged and untamed and about to wage war into liberty and not into regret; let us show forth at once in the first engagement what men Caledonia has held in reserve for itself).

⁸⁴ *Deliberative Subjunctive* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.19: sī tamen tenderent in pāce temptāre quae nē cīvīlium quidem bellōrum victōrēs expostulāverint, cūr contrā mōrem obsequiī, contrā fas discīplīnae vim meditentur? (If they were nevertheless striving to attempt in peace the sorts of things which not even the victors of civil wars demanded, why ought they contemplate violence against the custom of obedience, against the righteousness of military discipline?).

⁸⁵ *Potential Subjunctive* – Tac. *Germ.* 2: Ipsōs Germānōs indigenās crēdiderim (I might have believed that the Germans themselves are natives).

⁸⁶ *Optative Subjunctive* – Tac. *Ann.* 3.19: atque utinam egō potius filiō iuvenī quam ille patrī senī cessisset (and O that I had yielded to my son, a youth, rather than that he had yielded to his father, an old man).

⁸⁷ An *Adjectival Clause* modifies nouns or other substantives, or it may function substantively itself. An *Adverbial Clause* modifies verbal forms or adjectives most commonly. A *Substantive Clause* functions most often as the *Direct Object* or *Subject* of a verbal form.

Clauses are determined by examining their syntactic relationship to their *Main Clause*. The particular subordinating conjunctions, pronouns, or particles that introduce each clause (often the first word of the clause) and/or the verbal form of the *Main Clause* will often – but not always – help to narrow the range of possibilities.⁸⁸ Clauses are considered to be *neuter*, and so any adjective or relative pronoun referring to a clause will be *neuter*.

- I. **ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES** with [*quī, quae, quod, ubi, unde, quō, et cētera*]: There are three types of adjectival clause, all form of the *Relative Clause*. In the majority of instances, a *Relative Clause* uses an *Indicative* verb and just functions as an adjectival clause to give further information concerning the antecedent⁸⁹ of the relative pronoun: i.e. the entire *Relative Clause* adjectivally modifies the antecedent, as if it were a single giant adjective.
 - A. **Relative Clause:** When it uses an *Indicative* verb, the *Relative Clause* functions adjectivally to indicate the actual qualities or actions associated with the antecedent of its relative pronoun: e.g. Caesar, quī mātrem suam amat, rem publicam dēlēre vult. (Caesar, who loves his mother, wants to destroy the Republic.)⁹⁰ Although most *Relative Clauses* contain a relative pronoun, some may use a relative adverb like [*ubi, unde, quō*] while describing an antecedent: e.g. Locus, ubi mīlitēs pugnāt, salūbris nōn est. (The place, where the soldiers are fighting, is not healthy.)
 - B. **Relative Clause of Characteristic:** The *Relative Clause of Characteristic* functions adjectivally to give further information concerning the antecedent of its relative pronoun, with the difference being that instead of reporting a fact by using an *Indicative* verb, it uses a *Subjunctive* verb to suggest the sort of actions that the antecedent would perform (the character or nature of the antecedent rather than the real actions): e.g. Caesar, quī mātrem suam necet, rem publicam dēlēre vult. (Caesar, who would kill his own mother, wants to destroy the Republic.)⁹¹ No claim is being made that Caesar actually killed his mother, but it is asserted that he is the sort of person that would.
 - C. **Relative Clause in Indirect Statement:** As is typical of most dependant clauses, when a *Relative Clause* occurs in *Indirect Statement* (i.e. its antecedent is within a clause in *Indirect Statement*), its verb is typically placed in the *Subjunctive*: e.g. Brutus Caesarem, quī in Galliā urbēs oppugnet, furem esse dīcit. (Brutus says that Caesar, who is attacking cities in Gaul, is a thief.)⁹²

⁸⁸ Remember that the *Main Clause* (i.e. the clause to which a dependent clause is subordinated) may itself be a dependent clause.

⁸⁹ The antecedent [< *ante + cedo*] typically comes earlier in sequence than the relative pronoun (in prose usually immediately before). The relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in *number* and *gender*, but its *case* is determined by its syntactic function within the relative clause.

⁹⁰ *Relative Clause* – Tac. *Dial.* 1.1: [hominum] quōs eandem hanc quaestiōnem pertractantīs iuvenis admodum audīvī ([of the men] whom I, still a youth, heard discussing this same question).

⁹¹ *Relative Clause of Characteristic* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.4: [adulescentibus] quī rem publicam interim premant quandōque distrahant ([to the adolescents] who would oppress the Republic for now and at some point would drag it apart); Tac. *Ann.* 1.19: [temptāre] quae nē cīvīlium quidem bellōrum victōrēs expostulāverint ([to attempt] the sorts of things which not even the victors of civil wars demanded).

⁹² *Relative Clause in Indirect Statement* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.25: tandem interruptō tumultū litterās patris recitat, in quīs perscrīptum erat, praecipuam ipsī fortissimārum legiōnum cūram, quibuscum plūrima bella tolerāvisset; (With the tumult finally having been broken up, he recited the letter of his father, in which it had been written out that he himself had a particular care of the bravest legions, with whom he had endured very many wars).

II. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES: There are many types of *Adverbial Clauses*, but they all modify something in the *Main Clause* as if they were a single giant adverb: i.e. the entire *Adverbial Clause* adverbially modifies a single element in its *Main Clause*; this modified element is often the main verb of the *Main Clause*, but it may frequently also be a verbal noun, verbal adjective, an adjective, or even – rarely – a noun. The particular subordinating conjunction or particle associated with the *Adverbial Clause* can eliminate some possibilities, but is rarely conclusive in itself: e.g. [*ut*] is found in the *Purpose Clause*, *Result Clause*, *Causal Clause*, *Clause of Comparison*, *Substantive Noun Clause*, *Indirect Question*, *et cētera*. The only way to identify the exact semantic force of an *Adverbial Clause* is to identify its precise syntactic function: i.e. what type of clause is it and what does it modify. Constructions in the *Main Clause* sometimes signal the type of *Adverbial Clause* expected.

A. **Purpose Clause** with [*ut*, *utī*, *nē*, *ut nē*]: The *Purpose Clause* is an adverbial clause that uses a *Present* or an *Imperfect Subjunctive* verb and explains the reason (purpose) why the action of the *Main Clause* was performed: i.e. the action of the *Main Clause* was taken in order to **cause** or to **prevent** the action of the dependent clause.⁹³ The *Purpose Clause* normally modifies a verbal form in the *Main Clause*, frequently the main verb.

1. *Purpose Clause* with [*ut*]: The *Purpose Clause* explains that the action of the *Main Clause* was taken in order to **cause** the action of the dependent clause: e.g. Caesar rem publicam dēlēvit, *ut* ipse rēx fieret. (Caesar destroyed the republic, so that he himself would become king.)⁹⁴
2. *Negative Purpose Clause* with [*nē*]: The *Negative Purpose Clause* explains that the action of the *Main Clause* was taken in order to **prevent** the action of the dependent clause: e.g. Caesar rem publicam dēlēvit, *nē* ā hostibus suīs necārētur. (Caesar destroyed the republic, so that he would not be killed by his enemies.)⁹⁵

B. **Result Clause** with [*ut*, *ut nōn*]: The *Result Clause* is an adverbial clause that uses a *Subjunctive* verb and indicates the mere result of the action of the *Main Clause*, rather than explaining the intention of that action. The *Main Clause* will often contain an adverb expressing degree or manner [*tam*, *ita*, *sic*, *adeō*, *et cētera*] or an adjectival form like [*tantus*, *-a*, *-um*]:⁹⁶ The *Result Clause* normally modifies a verbal form in the *Main Clause*, frequently the main verb.

1. *Result Clause* with [*ut*]: The *Result Clause* indicates that the action of the *Main Clause* caused the action of the *Result Clause* to happen: e.g. Caesar rem publicam tam scelerātē dēlēvit, *ut* Cassius Caesarem interficere vellet. (Caesar so wickedly destroyed the republic, (with the result) that

⁹³ A *Purpose Clause* may also be introduced by a relative pronoun: the *Relative Clause of Purpose* described below.

⁹⁴ *Purpose Clause* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.7: dābat et fāmae ut vocātus ēlectusque potius ā rē publicā vidērētur quam per uxōrium ambitum et senīlī adoptiōne inrepsisse (he was even yielding to reputation so that he would seem to have been called and chosen by the Republic rather than to have slithered in through wifely canvassing and by a senile adoption).

⁹⁵ *Negative Purpose Clause* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.7: [vultūque compositō] *nē* laetī excessū principis neu tristiōrēs pīrmordiō ([with their expression composed,] so that they would neither be happy due to the death of a princeps nor too sad due to the beginning of another).

⁹⁶ A *Result Clause* may also be introduced by a relative pronoun: the *Relative Clause of Result* described below.

Cassius wants to assassinate Caesar.)⁹⁷ [Obviously, Caesar would not have intended to make Cassius want to kill him.]

2. *Negative Result Clause* with [*ut*] + [*nōn*]⁹⁸: The *Negative Result Clause* indicates that the action of the *Main Clause* prevented the action of the *Negative Result Clause* from happening: e.g. Caesar rem publicam tam sceleratē dēlēvit, ut Cassius Caesarem nōn amāret. (Caesar so wickedly destroyed the republic, (with the result) that Cassius does not love Caesar.)⁹⁹

C. **Consecutive Clause** with [*quīn* (quī-ne)]: The *Consecutive Clause* with [*quīn*] is an adverbial clause that uses a *Subjunctive* verb and that is nearly always found with a negative main clause, which is made into a double-negative by [*quīn*]. The *Consecutive Clause* with [*quīn*] often resembles a *Negative Result Clause* or a (negated) *Relative Clause of Characteristic*: e.g. Caesar nōn tam valdē amātus est, quīn senatōrēs eum necāverint. (Caesar was not so strongly loved, that the senators did not kill him.) Nēmo Romā adest, quīn Caesarem necāre velit. (No one is present at Rome, who does not want to kill Caesar [but that he wants to kill Caesar].)

D. **Conditional Constructions**: *Protasis* introduced by [*sī*, *nisi*, *nī*, *sī nōn*, *sīn*, *sīve*]: A conditional construction is composed of an adverbial *Dependent Clause* termed the *protasis* that states the condition to be met (IF), combined with a *Main Clause* termed the *apodosis*, which expresses the result if the condition is met (THEN): if the *protasis* is true, then the *apodosis* is true.¹⁰⁰ While the *protasis*, as a dependant clause, has a finite verb, the *apodosis* may have an infinitive, if the condition is embedded within *Indirect Statement*. The *apodosis* may also be any form of statement or question with a verb in any mood; however, certain combinations of tense and mood in *protasis* and *apodosis* are significantly more common and are thus named. The *protasis* normally modifies the main verb in the *apodosis*.

1. **Simple Condition: (Protasis: [*sī*] + *Indicative*; Apodosis: *Indicative*)** The *Simple Condition* uses verbs in the *Indicative mood* (in any tense other than the *Future*) to express the simple fact of the *apodosis* if the condition of the *protasis* is met: e.g. Sī Caesar trans Rubicōnem fluvium progreditur, facinus nefandum committit. (If Caesar is advancing across the Rubicon river, he is committing an unspeakable crime.)¹⁰¹
2. **Future More Vivid: (Protasis: [*sī*] + *Future/F-P Indicative*; Apodosis: *Future/F-P Indicative*)** The *Future More Vivid Condition* uses verbs in the *Indicative mood* and expresses a definite outcome in the future: e.g. Sī Caesar trans Rubicōnem fluvium prōgrediētur, facinus nefandum

⁹⁷ *Result Clause* – Tac. Ann. 1.3: nam senem Augustum dēvinxerat adeō, utī nepōtem ūnicum, Agrippam Postumum, in insulam Planasiam prōiēcērit, ... ([For she had overcome Augustus to such an extent,] that he cast his only grandson, Agrippa Postumus, into the island Planasia).

⁹⁸ Other negative words [*nēmō*, *nullus*, *numquam*, *nihil*, *et cētera*] can introduce a *Negative Result Clause*, but never [*nē*] as in the *Negative Purpose Clause*.

⁹⁹ *Negative Result Clause* – Tac. Ann. 1.30: auxerat mīlitum cūrās praemātūra hiems imbribus continuīs adeōque saevīs, ut nōn ēgredi tentōria, congregārī inter sē, vix tūtārī signa possent, ([a premature winter increased the cares of the soldiers, a winter with rains continuous and savage to the extent] that they were not able, to leave the tents, to congregate amongst themselves, scarcely to protect the standards).

¹⁰⁰ Other than in the case of the contrafactual conditions, a conditional construction does not imply anything about whether the condition of its *protasis* has been or will be met, only what the result would be if it were to be met.

¹⁰¹ *Simple Condition* – Tac. Ann. 1.2: nē Iulianīs quidem partibus nisi Caesar dux reliquus (not even for the Julian factions was there a leader remaining, unless it was Caesar).

committet. (If Caesar shall advance across the Rubicon river, he shall commit an unspeakable crime.)¹⁰²

3. **Future Less Vivid: (Protasis: [sī] + Present Subjunctive; Apodosis: Present Subjunctive)** The *Future Less Vivid Condition* expresses a potential (ideal) outcome. Thus, the *Future Less Vivid Condition* is a less emphatic expression of a less certain result than the *Future More Vivid Condition*: e.g. Sī Caesar trans Rubicōnem fluvium prōgrediātur, facinus nefandum committat. (If Caesar should advance across the Rubicon river, he would commit an unspeakable crime.)¹⁰³
4. **Present Contrafactual: (Protasis: [sī] + Imperfect Subjunctive; Apodosis: Imperfect Subjunctive)** The *Present Contrafactual* (Present Contrary to Fact) expresses what could be now if conditions were different: e.g. Sī Pompeius tam fortis quam Caesar esset, in bellō vinceret. (If Pompey were being as brave as Caesar, he would be conquering in the war.)¹⁰⁴ [Meaning that Pompey is not in fact as brave as Caesar, and thus is not conquering in the war.]
5. **Past Contrafactual: (Protasis: [sī] + Pluperfect Subjunctive; Apodosis: Pluperfect/Imperfect Subjunctive)** The *Past Contrafactual* (Past Contrary to Fact) expresses what could have been if conditions had been different: e.g. Sī Pompeius tam fortis quam Caesar fuisset, in bellō vīcisset. (If Pompey had been as brave as Caesar, he would have conquered in the war.)¹⁰⁵ [Meaning that Pompey was not in fact as brave as Caesar, and thus did not conquer in the war.]
6. **Mixed Condition: (Protasis: [sī] + ???; Apodosis: ???)** Roman authors frequently bend the “rules” of conditional construction in terms of tense and mood in order to change the emphasis of the condition or to make the condition more emphatic. These constructions are termed *Mixed Conditions*: e.g. Sī Caesar trans Rubicōnem fluvium prōgrediātur, facinus nefandum committet. (If Caesar should advance across the Rubicon river, he shall commit an unspeakable crime.)¹⁰⁶ Here the *protasis* of a *Future Less Vivid* is combined with the *apodosis* of a *Future More Vivid* to indicate that, while the action of the *protasis* is uncertain, the outcome in the *apodosis* is sure.

E. **Temporal Clause** (When...) with [cum, ubi, postquam, quandō, dum, ut, simul atque]: The *Temporal Clause* is an adverbial clause that describes the exact relationship in time between the action of its clause and the action of the *Main Clause*; the *Temporal Clause* can happen *Prior* (when, after, as soon as),

¹⁰² *Future More Vivid Condition* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.17: ac sī quis tot cāsūs vītā superāverit, trahī adhuc dīversās in terrās (and if someone shall have survived so many disasters in life, he is dragged still into diverse lands).

¹⁰³ *Future Less Vivid Condition* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.29: sī supplicēs audiat, scriptūrum patrī ut plācātus legiōnum precēs exciperet ([he said that] if he should hear them as supplicants, he was about to write to his father that he – having been placated – should accept the prayers of the legions). The *apodosis* is within *Indirect Statement*, and thus scriptūrum (esse) is used instead of a finite future verb.

¹⁰⁴ *Present Contrafactual Condition* – Tac. *Dial.* 1.1: vix Hercule audērem, sī mihi mea sententia prōferenda ac nōn disertissimōrum, ut nostrīs temporibus, hominum sermō repetendus esset, (hardly by Hercules would I dare, if my opinion were needed to be put forth by myself and the speech of the most eloquent men, for our times, were not needing to be called back).

¹⁰⁵ *Past Contrafactual Condition* – Tac. *Agricola* 16: quod nisi Paulīnus cognitō prōvinciae mōtū properē subvēnisset, āmissa Britannia foret (because if with the disturbance of the province having been recognized Paulinus had not come to assist, Britannia would have been lost).

¹⁰⁶ *Mixed Condition* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.13: [dixerat] L. Arruntium nōn indignum et sī cāsus darētur ausūrum ([he had said that] L. Arruntius was not unworthy and was about to dare it, if a chance should be given); Plinius, *Panegyricus* 1: sī adhuc dubium fuisset, forte cāsūque rectōrēs terrīs an aliquō nūmine darentur, principem tamen nostrum liquēret dīuīnitus constitūtum (if there had still been a doubt, whether rulers were being to the lands by luck or chance or by some divine power, it is clear that our princeps was set in place by divine providence).

Simultaneous (when, as long as, while), or *Subsequent* (until) in time relative to the *Main Clause*.¹⁰⁷ The *Temporal Clause* normally modifies a verbal form in the *Main Clause*, frequently the main verb.

1. *Temporal Clause* with [*cum*] employs any tense of the *Indicative* verb to indicate the absolute time of the *Main Clause*: e.g. C. Iulius Caesar, cum Galliam oppugnāvit, magnam pecuniam rapere cupiēbat. (Gaius Iulius Caesar, when he attacked Gaul, was wanting to seize much money.)¹⁰⁸
2. *Temporal Clause* with [*ubi*, *postquam*, *ut*, *simul atque*] most commonly employs a *Historical Present* or *Perfect Indicative* verb to indicate the absolute time of the *Main Clause*: e.g. C. Iulius Caesar, ubi Galliam oppugnāvit, magnam pecuniam rapere cupiēbat. (Gaius Iulius Caesar, when he attacked Gaul, was wanting to seize much money.)¹⁰⁹

F. **Circumstantial Clause** (While...) with [*cum*, *dum*, *ubi*, *ut*,]: The *Circumstantial Clause* is an adverbial clause that describes the general circumstances under which the action of the *Main Clause* takes place and frequently takes an *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect Subjunctive* verb. The *Circumstantial Clause* is similar to a *Temporal Clause*, except that it shows a less exact relationship in time. The *Circumstantial Clause* normally modifies a verbal form in the *Main Clause*, frequently the main verb.

1. *Circumstantial Clause* with [*cum*] uses a *Subjunctive* verb and indicates the relative time of the main clause: e.g. C. Iulius Caesar, cum Galliam oppugnāret, magnam pecūniam rapere cupīvit. (Gaius Iulius Caesar, while he was attacking Gaul, wanted to seize much money.)¹¹⁰
2. *Circumstantial Clause* with [*dum*] most often uses an *Indicative* verb and indicates the relative time of the main clause: e.g. C. Iulius Caesar, dum Galliam oppugnābat, magnam pecūniam rapere cupīvit. (Gaius Iulius Caesar, while he was attacking Gaul, wanted to seize much money.)¹¹¹

G. **Causal Clause** (Since...) with [*cum*, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quandō*]: The *Causal Clause* is an adverbial clause that explains the origin (cause) of the action of the *Main Clause*. The *Causal Clause* (i.e. *Dependent Clause* causes the *Main Clause*) functions as the opposite of the *Purpose Clause* (i.e. *Main Clause* intentionally causes the *Dependent Clause*) and the *Result Clause* (i.e. *Main Clause* happens to causes the *Dependent Clause*). The *Causal Clause* normally modifies a verbal form in the *Main Clause*, frequently the main verb.

¹⁰⁷ Note that [*cum*] does not mean “when,” “since,” or “although;” the closest literal translation might be “given that.” It is the construction of the *Main Clause* and the mood of the verb of a *Dependent Clause* that makes a clause with [*cum*] temporal, circumstantial, causal, or concessive.

¹⁰⁸ *Temporal Clause with [cum]* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.11: ad genua ipsius manūs tendere, cum prōferri libellum recitārique iussit (they held out their hands toward the knees of the man himself, when he ordered the little book to be brought forth and read out loud); Tac. *Ann.* 1.13: cum dixisset 'quō usque patiēris, Caesar, nōn adesse caput rei pūblicae? (when he had said ‘for how long will you endure, Caesar, that there be no head for the Republic).

¹⁰⁹ *Temporal Clause without [cum]* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.3: ut Agrippa vītā concessit, ... (as [when] Agrippa departed from life, ...).

¹¹⁰ *Circumstantial Clause with [cum]* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.7: nusquam cunctabundus nisi cum in senātū loqueretur ([he was] never hesitant, unless while he was speaking in the Senate); Tac. *Ann.* 1.8: cum occisus dictator Caesar aliis pessimum aliis pulcherrimum facinus vidēretur (when the dictator Caesar having been killed was seeming to be the worst deed to some and the most beautiful to others).

¹¹¹ *Circumstantial Clause with [dum]* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.4: dum Augustus aetate validus sēque et domum et pācem sustentāvit (while Augustus, being strong in age, sustained himself and his house and the peace). When it uses a *Subjunctive* verb, it indicates anticipation: Tac. *Ann.* 1.4: multa Antōniō, dum interfectōrēs patris ulcisceretur, multa Lepidō concessisse (he yielded many things to Antonius and many things to Lepidus, while he was taking revenge upon the slayers of his father).

1. *Causal Clause* with [cum] uses a *Subjunctive* verb and explains the action of the *Main Clause*: e.g. Caesar rem publicam dēlet, cum vir improbissimus sit. (Caesar is destroying the republic, since he is a very wicked man.)¹¹²
2. *Causal Clause* with [quod , quia] uses an *Indicative* or a *Subjunctive* verb under specific circumstances to explain the action of the *Main Clause*:
 - a. An *Indicative* verb indicates that the *Causal Clause* gives an explanation of the action of the *Main Clause* that the speaker believes to be the true: e.g. Caesar rem publicam dēlet, quod vir improbissimus est. (Caesar is destroying the republic, since he (in the view of the speaker) is a very wicked man.)¹¹³
 - b. A *Subjunctive* verb indicates that the *Causal Clause* gives an alleged explanation of the action of the *Main Clause* that the speaker is reporting and does not know to be true: e.g. Caesar rem publicam dēlet, quod vir improbissimus sit. (Caesar is destroying the republic, since (it is alleged that) he is a very wicked man.)
3. *Causal Clause* with [quoniam , quandō] uses a *Indicative* verb and gives an explanation of the action of the *Main Clause* that the speaker believes to be the true:: e.g. Caesar rem publicam dēlet, quoniam vir improbissimus est. (Caesar is destroying the republic, since he is a very wicked man.)

H. **Concessive Clause** (Although...) with [cum , quamvīs , quamquam , etsī , etiam sī , tametsī , ut , licet]:
 The *Concessive Clause* is an adverbial clause that expresses an idea that is in conflict with the idea of the *Main Clause*, so that it is necessary to concede that that the information of the *Concessive Clause* is true. The adverbial form [tamen] is often contained within the *Main Clause*. The *Concessive Clause* normally modifies a verbal form in the *Main Clause*, frequently the main verb.

1. *Concessive Clause* with [cum , quamvīs , ut] uses a *Subjunctive* verb and expresses an idea that is in conflict with the idea of the *Main Clause*: e.g. cum Caesar rem publicam dēlēret, (tamen) vir probus fuit. (Although Caesar was destroying the republic, (nevertheless) he was a morally upright (elite) man.)¹¹⁴
2. *Concessive Clause* with [quamquam , etsī] most often uses an *Indicative* verb and expresses an idea that is in conflict with the idea of the *Main Clause*: e.g. quamquam Caesar rem publicam dēlēbat, (tamen) vir probus fuit. (Although Caesar was destroying the republic, (nevertheless) he was a morally upright (elite) man.)¹¹⁵

¹¹² *Causal Clause* with [cum] – Tac. Ann. 1.2: nullō adversante, cum ferōcissimī per aciēs aut prōscriptiōne cecidissent (with no one opposing him, since the most fierce had fallen throughout the battle lines or by a proscription).

¹¹³ *Causal Clause* with [quia] – Tac. Ann. 1.13: prope ā militibus interfectum quia Tiberius cāsū an manibus eius inpedītus prōciderat (that he was almost killed by the soldiers, because Tiberius had fallen due to chance or having been impeded by the hands of that man).

¹¹⁴ *Concessive Clause* with [cum] – Tac. Dial. 1.1: cūr, cum priōra saecula tot ēminentium orātōrum ingeniīs glōriāque flōruerint, nostra potissimum aetās dēserta et laude ēloquentiae orbāta vix nōmen ipsum orātōris retineat ([you ask] why, although earlier centuries flourished due to the talents and glory of so many outstanding orators, our age particularly deserted and bereft from the praise of eloquence hardly retains the very name of orator).

¹¹⁵ *Concessive Clause* with [quamquam] – Tac. Ann. 1.24: quamquam maestitiā imitārentur contumāciae propiōrēs (although they were imitating sorrow, they were closer to obstinacy).

- I. **Clause of Comparison** (as, as if, just as, than...) with [ut, quam, tamquam, quasi, velut, similiter ac]: The *Clause of Comparison* is an adverbial clause that normally modifies a verbal form in the *Main Clause* or a comparative form, by providing a point of comparison: Caesar tamquam hostis rem publicam dēlēbat (Caesar, as if he were an enemy, was destroying the Republic).¹¹⁶ The *Clause of Comparison* tamquam hostis modifies the verb dēlēbat. The *Clause of Comparison* may also modify a comparative adjective or adverb, much like the *Ablative of Comparison*: Caesar clēm̄entior quam Pompēius fuit (Caesar was more merciful than Pompēius). The *Clause of Comparison* quam Pompēius modifies the comparative adjective clēm̄entior.
- J. **Proviso Clause** (so long as..., while) with [modo, dummodo, tantum ut/nē]: The *Proviso Clause* is an adverbial clause that is similar to the *Consecutive Clause* with [cum] superficially, with the difference being that the *Proviso Clause* indicates that the statement of the *Main Clause* is true only as long as the condition of the *Proviso Clause* holds true: e.g. Caesar felix erit, dummodo Brutus timidus sit. (Caesar will be fortunate, as long as Brutus is timid: i.e. when Brutus is no longer timid, Caesar will no longer be fortunate.)¹¹⁷
- K. **ADVERBIAL RELATIVE CLAUSES** with [quī, quae, quod, ubi, unde, quō]: In the great majority of instances, a *Relative Clause* functions as an adjectival clause to give further information concerning the antecedent of the relative pronoun. The *Relative Clause* can, however, take the place of a number of adverbial *Dependent Clauses*. While it still modifies the antecedent, it also adverbially modifies a verbal form in its *Main Clause*.
1. **Relative Clause of Purpose:** The *Relative Purpose Clause* functions much like a *Purpose Clause*, to the extent that the sentence could make sense if the relative pronoun were replaced with [ut]: e.g. Caesar nuntium mīssit, quī Brutō ut pācem faceret persuādēret. (Caesar sent a messenger, who would persuade (so that he would persuade) Brutus to make peace.)¹¹⁸ Note that [ut pācem faceret] is a *Indirect Command* nested inside a *Relative Purpose Clause*.]
 2. **Relative Clause of Result:** The *Relative Clause of Result* functions much like a *Result Clause* with [ut], to the extent that the sentence could make sense if the relative pronoun were replaced with [ut]: e.g. Caesar rem publicam tam scelerātē dēlēvit, quō Cassius Caesarem interficere vellet. (Caesar so wickedly destroyed the republic, because of which Cassius wants to slaughter Caesar.)

¹¹⁶ *Clause of Comparison* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.7: nam Tiberius cuncta per consulēs incipiēbat tamquam vetere rē publicā et ambiguus imperandī (For Tiberius was beginning all things through the consuls, as if in the ancient Republic and hesitant of ruling); Tac. *Ann.* 1.2: ac novīs ex rēbus auctī tūta et praesentia quam vetera et periculōsa mallent ([since] men augmented from new matters were wanting safe and current things more than ancient and dangerous things); Tac. *Ann.* 1.6: nuntiantī centuriōnī, ut mōs militiae, factum esse quod imperāset, neque imperāsse sēsē et ratiōnem factī reddendam apud senātum rēpondit (to the centurion announcing, as is the custom of military service, that what he had commanded had been done, he replied that he had not ordered it and a reason of the deed would have to be given in the Senate).

¹¹⁷ *Proviso Clause* – Tac. *Germ.* 6: cēdere locō, dummodo rursus instēs, consiliū quam formīdinis arbitrantur (They consider that to withdraw from a place, so long as you once more press them, is characteristic of strategy rather than characteristic of fear).

¹¹⁸ *Relative Clause of Purpose* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.9: paucā admodum vī tractātā quō cēterīs quiēs esset (with altogether a little violence taken in hand, by which there would be peace for the other people); Tac. *Ann.* 1.3: quō plūribus mūnimentīs insisteret (by which he would stand upon more defenses); Plinius, *Epistulae* 6.16: petis ut tibi auunculī meī exitum scribam, quō uērius trādere posterīs possīs (You seek that I write to you the of my maternal uncle, by which you would be able to hand it down to those afterwards more accurately).

3. **Conditional Relative Clause:** A *Conditional Relative Clause* has an indefinite antecedent and is used as the *protasis* of a conditional sentence. When so used, the mood and tense of the verb of the *Relative Clause* follow the same pattern as for conditional *protases* with [*sī, nisi, et cētera*]: e.g. *quisquis trans Rubicōnem fluvium prōgrediētur, facinus nefandum committet.* (Whoever shall cross the Rubicon river, shall commit an unspeakable crime.)¹¹⁹ The relative clause [*quisquis trans Rubicōnem fluvium prōgrediētur*] uses a future *Indicative* verb and functions as the *protasis* of a *Future More Vivid* condition, since the *apodosis* [*facinus nefandum committet*] also uses a Future *Indicative* verb.

L. **Prepositional Phrase:** *Prepositional Phrases* are adverbial constructions composed of a substantive in the *Ablative* or *Accusative* case construed with a preposition.¹²⁰ It is the particular case usage in play that determines the semantic force of the *Prepositional Phrase*, not the particular preposition: e.g. *Cassius Caesarem in Cūrīā necāvit.* (Cassius murdered Caesar in the Curia.) The *Prepositional Phrase* [*in Cūrīā*] adverbially modifies the verb [*necāvit*], indicating *where* Cassius did the murdering. Note that the noun [*Cūrīā*] is an instance of the *Ablative of Location*. The following is a list of the most common case usages that attract the various prepositions:

ad	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	apud	<i>Accusative of Extent</i>
adversus	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	inter	<i>Accusative of Extent</i>
adversum	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	per	<i>Accusative of Extent</i>
ante	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	trāns (motion)	<i>Accusative of Extent</i>
circā	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>		
circum	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	ā/ab/abs	<i>Ablative of Orientation</i>
cis/citrā	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	cōram	<i>Ablative of Orientation</i>
contrā	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	dē	<i>Ablative of Orientation</i>
ergā	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	palam	<i>Ablative of Orientation</i>
extrā	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	procul ā/ab	<i>Ablative of Orientation</i>
in (motion)	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	tenus	<i>Ablative of Orientation</i>
īnfrā	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>		
intrā	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	ē/ex	<i>Ablative of Orientation</i>
iūxtā	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>		<i>Ablative of Cause (more rare)</i>
ob	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>		
penes	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	in (location)	<i>Ablative of Location</i>
post	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	prae	<i>Ablative of Location</i>
pōne	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	prō	<i>Ablative of Location</i>
praeter	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	sub (location)	<i>Ablative of Location</i>
prope	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	subter (location)	<i>Ablative of Location</i>
propter	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	super (location)	<i>Ablative of Location</i>
secundum	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>		
sub (motion)	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	cum	<i>Ablative of Accompaniment</i>
subter (motion)	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>		<i>Ablative of Manner (more rare)</i>
super (motion)	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>		
suprā	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	absque	<i>Ablative of Separation</i>
trāns (position)	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>	sine	<i>Ablative of Separation</i>
ultrā	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>		<i>Ablative of Manner (more rare)</i>
versus	<i>Accusative of Orientation</i>		
		tenus	<i>Objective Genitive</i>

¹¹⁹ *Conditional Relative Clause* – Petr. *Satyr.* 1.1: *quisquis servus sine dominicō iussū forās exierit, accipiet plāgās centum* (Whatever slave shall have gone out to the outdoors without the masterly command, he shall take one hundred blows).

¹²⁰ The preposition [*tenus*] may be construed with the *Objective Genitive* or the *Ablative of Orientation*, and it often follows the noun: e.g. *urbis tenus*. With many pronominal *Ablative* forms, [*tenus*] is written as one word: e.g. *quātenus* < *quā tenus*.

III. NOMINAL CLAUSES: There are five types of *Nominal Clauses*, but they all modify something in the *Main Clause* as if they were a single giant noun: i.e. the entire *Nominal Clause* modifies a single element in its *Main Clause* as an *Object*, a *Subject*, or stands in *apposition* to another substantive form. Constructions in the *Main Clause* sometimes signal the type of *Nominal Clause* expected.

A. **Substantive Noun Clause** with [*ut*, *nē*, *quod*]: (aka Indirect Command or Indirect Prohibition) The *Substantive Noun Clause* is a nominal clause that uses a *Subjunctive* verb with [*ut*, *nē*] and an *Indicative* verb with [*quod*] and functions as the *Direct Object* (or occasionally the *Subject*) of certain verbs of commanding to describe what is being commanded. Although similar in appearance to the *Purpose Clause*, the *Indirect Command* gives the content of a command in an indirect manner. This clause is often set up by a verb in the *Main Clause* expressing an act of will: e.g. *imperāre*, *monēre*, *cavēre*; however, the *Substantive Noun Clause* occurs with some frequency without any such verb in the main clause. Such instances cannot properly be described as an *Indirect Command*, although they are the same construction.

1. *Substantive Noun Clause* with [*ut*]: (aka *Indirect Command*) often gives the content of a command in an indirect manner, but it may also express the idea that something happen without being associated with any verbal idea of commanding or saying: e.g. Caesar *mīlitibus ut urbem dēleant* imperat. (Caesar orders the soldiers to destroy (that they should destroy) the city.)¹²¹ [The direct command would be: Caesar *mīlitibus* “*dēlēte urbem*” inquit. (Caesar says to the soldiers, “Destroy the city.”)]
2. *Substantive Noun Clause* with [*nē*]: (aka *Indirect Prohibition*) gives the content of a prohibition in an indirect manner: e.g. Caesar *mīlitibus nē urbem dēleant* imperat. (Caesar orders the soldiers not to destroy (that they should not destroy) the city.)¹²²
3. *Substantive Noun Clause* with [*quod*]: Functions as a substantive to express a complex idea as a noun, frequently with [*accidit*, *vidētur*, *praetereō*]: e.g. *quod Caesar urbem dēlet* nōbīs malum vidētur. (That Caesar is destroying the city seems bad to us.)¹²³ The *Substantive Noun Clause* *quod Caesar urbem dēlet* is the *Subject* of *vidētur*.

B. **Fear Clause** with [*ut*, *nē*, *nē* + *nōn*]: The *Fear Clause* is a substantive clause that uses a *Subjunctive* verb and functions as the *Direct Object* (or occasionally the *Subject*) of certain verbs of fearing to

¹²¹ *Substantive Noun Clause* with [*ut*] – Tac. *Ann.* 1.8: tum consultātum dē honōribus; ex quīs maximē insignēs vīsī, ut portā triumphālī dūcerētur fūnus Gallus Asinius, ut lēgum latārum titulī, victārum ab eō gentium vocābula anteferrerentur L. Arruntius censuēre (then there was a consultation concerning honors; from which these seemed most outstanding, Gallus Asinius proposed that the funeral be led through a triumphal arch, L. Arruntius proposed that the titles of the enacted laws and the names of the peoples conquered by him be carried in front); Tac. *Ann.* 1.6: ut exilium eius senātūs consultō sancīrētur perfēcerat (he had accomplished so that the exile of him would be ordained by a decree of the Senate); Tac. *Ann.* 1.5: spemque ex eō fore ut iuvenis Penātibus avī redderētur (that there was hope from this that it would happen that the young man would be returned to the Penates of his grandfather).

¹²² *Substantive Noun Clause* with [*nē*] – Tac. *Ann.* 1.6: [praescripsisset] *nē* cunctārētur Agrippam morte adficere quandōque ipse suprēmum diem explēvisset ([he had written] that he should not hesitate to afflict Agrippa with death whenever he himself had completed the final day); Tac. *Ann.* 1.6: [monuit] *nē* arcāna domūs, *nē* consilia amīcōrum, ministeria mīlitum vulgārentur ([he warned] that the secrets of the house, that the councils of friends and the services of the soldiers should not be made public).

¹²³ *Substantive Noun Clause* with [*quod*] – Caes. *Gall.* 4.13: Opportūnissima rēs accidit quod Germānī vēnērunt. (The most opportune thing happened: the fact that the Germans came.) The *Substantive Noun Clause* *quod Germānī vēnērunt* stands in apposition to the noun *res*.

describe the fear that something will happen or that something will fail to happen.¹²⁴ Although similar in appearance to a *Purpose Clause*, the *Fear Clause* does not explain the action of the *Main Clause*. This clause must be set up by a verbal form in the *Main Clause* expressing fear: e.g. metuēre, timēre, verērī:

1. *Fear Clause* with [nē]: The *Fear Clause* describes a fear that something will happen.: e.g. Caesar nē mīlitēs urbem dēleant metuit. (Caesar fears lest the soldiers destroy (that they will destroy) the city.) [Caesar does not want the soldiers to destroy the city, and he afraid that they will do it anyway.]¹²⁵
2. *Negative Fear Clause* with [ut] or [nē] + [nōn]: The *Negative Fear Clause* describes a fear that something will **not** happen: e.g. Caesar ut mīlitēs sibi pareant metuit. (Caesar fears lest the soldiers not obey (that they will not obey) him. ≈ Caesar is afraid about whether the soldiers will obey him or not. [Caesar wants the soldiers to obey him, and he afraid that they will not do it.]

C. **Indirect Question:** The *Indirect Question* is a substantive clause introduced by interrogative forms [quid, num, quanta, ubi, cur, ut, et cētera] and functions as the *Direct Object* (or occasionally the *Subject*) of certain verbs of questioning to describe what is being asked as a question (the content of the question). The *Indirect Question* may look superficially like a *Deliberative Subjunctive*, with the difference being that the *Indirect Question* is a dependent usage and delivered indirectly (in indirect statement): e.g. Caesar Brutum, quid Cassius in Senatū faceret, interrogāvit. (Caesar asked Brutus what Cassius did in the Senate.)¹²⁶ The *Direct Question* would be: quid Cassius in Senatū faciēbat? (What was Cassius doing in the Senate?)

D. **Indirect Statement:** (aka *Ōrātiō Oblīqua*) A clause in *Indirect Statement* is a substantive clause that functions as the *Direct Object* (or occasionally the *Subject*) most commonly of certain verbal forms associated with speech, perception, and thought [dīcere, vidēre, scīre, et cētera] and describes in an indirect way what is being said, perceived, or thought (the content of the statement). The *Indirect Statement* is marked by the use of accusatives and infinitives in place of nominatives and finite verbs: e.g. Caesar Brutum stultum esse dīxit. (Caesar said that Brutus was stupid.) The *Indirect Statement* is [Brutum stultum esse]. The *Direct Statement* would be: Brutus stultus est. (Brutus is stupid.)¹²⁷ When a

¹²⁴ As a substantive clause, the *Fear Clause* can also stand in apposition to a noun expressing fear or doubt: Tac. *Ann.* 1.6: causa praecipua ex formidine nē Germānicus, in cuius manū tot legiōnēs, immensa sociōrum auxilia, mīrus apud populum favor, habēre imperium quam exspectāre mallet (the particular cause was from the fear lest Germanicus, in whose hand was so many legions, unmeasured auxiliaries of the allies, marvelous favor with the populace, should prefer to have the imperium rather than to wait for it).

¹²⁵ *Fear Clause* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.6: [metuēns] nē reus subderetur ([fearing] lest he should be substituted as defendant).

¹²⁶ *Indirect Question* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.13: cum tractāret quīnam adipiscī principem locum suffectūrī abnuerent aut inparēs vellent vel idem possent cuperentque (when he was discussing, who – about to be sufficient – would refuse to take over the first place, or being inadequate would want [it], or at the same time would be able and would desire [it]); Tac. *Dial.* 1.1: [requīris] ... cūr, cum priōra saecula tot ēminentium ōrātorum ingeniīs glōriāque flōruerint, nostra potissimum aetās dēserta et laude ēloquentiae orbāta vix nōmen ipsum ōrātoris retineat ([you ask] why, although earlier centuries flourished due to the talents and glory of so many outstanding orators, our age particularly deserted and bereft from the praise of eloquence hardly retains the very name of orator).

¹²⁷ *Indirect Statement* – Tac. *Ann.* 1.19: Blaesus multā dīcendī arte nōn per sēditionem et turbās dēsideria mīlitum ad Caesarem ferenda ait, neque veterēs ab imperātoribus priscīs neque ipsōs ā dīvō Augustō tam nova petivisse; et parum in tempore incipientis principis cūrās onerārī (Blaesus said with much art of speaking that the desires of the soldier were not to be brought to Caesar through sedition and mobs, and that neither the ancients from the old-time commanders, nor they themselves from the divine Augustus had sought such new things; and that for the cares of the just-getting-started princeps to be burdened it was hardly in the time).

quoted speech continues for multiple sentences, the sentences may continue in *Indirect Speech*, although individually they are subordinated to no finite verb in their own sentence.

1. *Implied Indirect Statement*: Words that imply the process of speech, perception, or thought can initiate *Indirect Statement*.
2. *Subjunctive within Indirect Statement*: When a clause with a normally *Indicative* verb is subordinate to a clause in *Indirect Statement*, the Indicative verb will often be changed into a *Subjunctive* to emphasize the subordination: e.g. the *Relative Clause in Indirect Statement*. A clause with a normally *Subjunctive* verb is unchanged.

3. Reflexive Subject: When

- E. **Direct Statement**: (aka *Ōrātiō Rēcta*) In addition to standing independently, a clause in *Direct Statement* – being a substantive clause – can also function as the *Direct Object* (or occasionally the *Subject*) with specific verbal forms associated with direct quotation of speech [*inquam* (always), *aiō* (sometimes, usually with *ut*)].¹²⁸

3.5 **SYNTAX OF THE PARTICIPLE**: A participle (and the dependant words within its phrase) can express the circumstances relating to the action of its *Main Clause*, taking the place of a number of adverbial subordinate constructions: e.g. temporal, causal, concessive, purpose, or conditional clauses. The *Circumstantial Participle* may adjectivally modify one of the substantive forms in the main clause, or it may itself function substantively. Under specific circumstances, a participle in the *Ablative* case may also stand separated (*absolutum*) from the *Main Clause*: i.e. not in agreement with anything within the *Main Clause*.

- A. **Temporal Circumstantial Participle**: progressus Rōmam Caesar urbem cēpit. (Having advanced to Roma, Caesar took the city.) expresses the relationship in time with the *Main Clause* much as would the *Temporal Clause*: cum Caesar Rōmam progressus esset, urbem cēpit. (When Caesar had advanced to Roma, he took the city.)¹²⁹
- B. **Causal Circumstantial Participle**: progressus Rōmam Caesar nocēns fuit. (Having advanced to Roma, Caesar was guilty.) expresses the cause of the *Main Clause* much as would the *Causal Clause*: cum Caesar Rōmam progressus esset, nocēns fuit. (Since Caesar had advanced to Roma, he was guilty.)
- C. **Concessive Circumstantial Participle**: progressus Rōmam Caesar **tamen** urbem nōn cēpit. (Having advanced to Roma, Caesar nevertheless did not take the city.) expresses an idea in conflict with the idea of the *Main Clause* much as would the *Concessive Clause*: cum Caesar Rōmam progressus esset, **tamen** urbem nōn cēpit. (Although Caesar had advanced to Roma, he nevertheless did not take the city.)
- D. **Conditional Circumstantial Participle**: progrediēns Rōmam Caesar nocēns sit. (Advancing toward Roma, Caesar would be guilty.) expresses the condition under which the *Main Clause* is true, much as

¹²⁸ *Direct Statement* – Caes. Gall. 4.25: ... qui X legionis aquilam gerebat, obtestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, “desilite,” inquit, “milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere;” (... he who was bearing the eagle of the 10th legion, having beseeched the gods that the matter might turn out well for the legion, said “Leap down soldiers, unless you want to hand over the eagle to the enemies;”).

would the *Conditional Clause*: sī Caesar Rōmam progređiātur, nocēns sit. (If Caesar should be advancing toward Roma, he would be guilty.)

- E. **Ablative Absolute:** Unlike the preceding circumstantial participles, the participle of the *Ablative Absolute*, rather than agreeing with a substantive in the *Main Clause*, agrees with a substantive in the *Ablative* case that does not directly refer to anything within the *Main Clause*. The *Ablative Absolute* can function in any of the roles of the circumstantial participle: temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional: e.g. the *Ablative Absolute*: legiōnibus Caesaris Rōmam prōgređientibus, Pompeius Brundisium fūgit. (With the legions of Caesar advancing toward Roma, Pompeius fled to Brundisium.) expresses the cause of the *Main Clause* much as would the *Causal Clause*: cum legiōnēs Caesaris Rōmam prōgrederentur, Pompeius Brundisium fūgit. (Since the legions of Caesar were advancing toward Roma, Pompeius fled to Brundisium.)

3.6 SYNTAX OF THE INFINITIVE: As verbal nouns, *Infinitives* are neuter, singular, nouns that occur only in the *nominative* and *accusative* and take their tense and often voice from the verbal stem on which they are built. The tense of an infinitive only indicates *aspect*, not *time*. An *Infinitive* retains its verbal force and can usually be construed with the same constructions as the verb from which it is derived: e.g. if the verb can take a *Direct Object*, then the Infinitive can also take a *Direct Object*. As nouns, infinitives are frequently used as *Direct Objects*, *Interior Objects*, *Subject Nominatives*, and occasionally as *Predicate Nominatives*.

- A. **Complimentary Infinitive:**¹³⁰ Forms derived from certain verbs [*velle*, *posse*, *dēbēre*, *audēre*, *et cētera*] normally are construed with an infinitive as their *Direct Object*, and this usage is typically termed a *Complimentary Infinitive*, since it is said to complete the meaning of the verbal idea: e.g. Mārcus Quīntum pulsāre vult. (Marcus wants to hit Quintus.)
- B. **Historical Infinitive:**¹³¹ The *Present* infinitive can be used much like a finite verb indicating past *time*. The *Historical Infinitive* is used in narrative passages most often to take the place of an *Imperfect* indicative, particularly by Sallust, Livy, and Tacitus. This construction is almost always found in independent clauses. The *Nominative* also functions as the *Subject* of a *Historical Infinitive*: e.g. Mārcus Quīntum pulsāre, sed Iūliam castīgāre. (Marcus hit Quintus, but he castigated Iulia.)
- C. **Explanatory (Epexegetical) Infinitive:**¹³² An infinitive can be used to modify an adjective to explain its meaning (technically this an *Accusative of Respect*): e.g. Mārcus pulsārī dignus est. (Marcus is worthy to be beaten.) This usage is more common in Ecclesiastical Latin, where it is used to translate and *Explanatory Infinitive* found in a Greek text, or is used to parallel the style of such texts.
- D. **Infinitive of Purpose:** In Archaic Latin this usage has a locatival sense: i.e. in the X-ing. In the Classical Latin literary language, the infinitive is not used to convey the idea of purpose in prose, but it is found in Classical Latin poetry.¹³³ In late and vulgar usage, however, the infinitive can be used much like an accusative *supine*: e.g. Paulus aurum petere venit. (Paulus is coming to seek gold).

¹³⁰ *Complimentary Infinitive* – Caes., *Gall.* 1.24: ... totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant. (... they hoped that they were able to get the power of Gaul entire.)

¹³¹ *Historical Infinitive* – Caes., *Gall.* 1.16: Interim cotidie Caesar Haeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. (Meanwhile, Caesar was badgering the Aedui (about) the grain, which they had promised as a people.)

¹³² *Epexegetical Infinitive* – Vergilius, *Eclogues* 10.32-33: soli cantare periti / Arcades. (The Arcadians alone are skilled to sing.)

¹³³ *Infinitive of Purpose* – Horatius, *Epistulae* 1.2.27: nos numerus sumus et fruges consumere nati, ... (We are a number and born to consume the fruits of the earth, ...)

- E. **Infinitive Subject:** An infinitive is frequently the *Subject* of impersonal verbs and other verbal forms:
e.g. nōn Mārcum Quīntō īrascī decet. (To be enraged at Quintus does not befit Marcus.)¹³⁴ The
Predicate Nominative of an *Infinitive Subject* will be neuter, singular.

3.7 SUBORDINATE CLAUSES AND PHRASES: *ADJECTIVAL, ADVERBIAL, AND NOMINAL*

I. ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES:

A. Adjectival Relative Clauses

1. *Relative Clause*
2. *Relative Clause of Characteristic*
3. *Relative Clause in Indirect Statement*

II. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES:

A. Purpose Clauses

1. *Purpose Clause* with [ut]
2. *Negative Purpose Clause* with [nē]

B. Result Clauses

1. *Result Clause* with [ut]
2. *Negative Result Clause* with [ut nōn]

C. Consecutive Clause:

D. Conditional Constructions:¹³⁵

1. *Simple Condition*
2. *Future More Vivid*
3. *Future Less Vivid*
4. *Present Contrafactual*
5. *Past Contrafactual*
6. *Mixed Condition*

E. Temporal Clause

F. Circumstantial Clause

G. Causal Clause

H. Concessive Clause

I. Clause of Comparison

J. Proviso Clause

K. Adverbial Relative Clauses

1. *Relative Clause of Purpose*
2. *Relative Clause of Result*
3. *Conditional Relative Clause*

L. Prepositional Phrases

III. NOMINAL CLAUSES:

A. Substantive Noun Clause

1. *Indirect Command* with [ut]
2. *Indirect Prohibition* with [nē]

B. Fear Clause

1. *Fear Clause* with [nē]
2. *Negative Fear Clause* w/ [ut] / [nē , nōn]

C. Indirect Question

D. Indirect Statement

E. Direct Statement

Circumstantial Participles

1. *Temporal Circumstantial Participle*
2. *Causal Circumstantial Participle*
3. *Concessive Circumstantial Participle*
4. *Conditional Circumstantial Participle*
5. *Ablative Absolute*

¹³⁴ *Infinitive Subject* – Juvenal, *Saturae* 2.1: ultra Sauromatas fugere hinc libet et glaciale Oceanum , ... (To flee from here beyond the Sarmatians and the icy ocean is pleasing, ...)

¹³⁵ The *protasis* is an adverbial *Dependent Clause*, while the *apodosis* serves as the *Main Clause* of the *protasis* and has a range of possible forms.

SECTION IV: PRINCIPAL PARTS AND THEIR DERIVATIVES

4.1 VERBAL MORPHOLOGY: All verbal forms (**verbs**, **verbal nouns**, and **verbal adjectives**) are formed by the addition of specific morphemes to 3 verbal stems, each of which is derived from one of the four principal parts of a verb.¹³⁶ Due to variation in the final vocalic sounds of their stems, there are five broad manners in which verbal forms are derived from their roots; these patterns of derivation are termed *conjugations*.¹³⁷ Each of the elements of a Latin verb was crucial to specifying the exact meaning of the verb in terms of *person*, *number*, *tense*, *voice*, and *mood*. Unlike English, which must specify the subject and many verbal aspects with additional words, a Latin verb incorporates all of this information within itself [*ambulābam* ≈ I was walking]:

- A. **Person** – [1st, 2nd, 3rd] indicates, in conjunction with **number**, what the subject of the verb can be. The majority of verbs encountered in narrative will be 3rd person.
- B. **Number** – [singular, plural] indicates, in conjunction with **person**, what the subject of the verb can be.
- C. **Tense** – [Imperfect System: *Present*, *Imperfect*, *Future*; Perfect System: *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, *Future-Perfect*] indicates the **time** from which an action is viewed (past, present, future) and the state of the action (incomplete, completed) called **aspect**. The tenses of the *Imperfect System* have incomplete aspect, while the tenses of the *Perfect System* have completed aspect.
- D. **Voice** – [active, deponent, passive] indicates whether the subject does the action (active), or is acted on by an outside agent (passive). Deponent verbs have only *Passive* finite forms but are strictly *Active* in meaning.¹³⁸ Some verbs, termed semi-deponent verbs, are deponent only in the *Perfect System*.¹³⁹
- E. **Mood** – [indicative, subjunctive, imperative] indicates the manner (*modus*) in which a verb operates. The **indicative** indicates what is, was, or will be real. The **subjunctive** indicates what should or might be, or it functions for subordination. The **imperative** gives a direct order.

4.2 VERB FORMATION: Latin verbs are formed through the specific sequencing of stems, affixes, and endings to indicate the properties of *person*, *number*, *tense*, *voice*, and *mood* according to their particular conjugation: [(prefix)-stem-(suffix)-ending].

- A. **Verbal Prefix** – Prepositions, which were originally adverbs, can be prefixed directly to many verbal forms to modify their force: e.g. [*in* + *gradior* > *ingredior* (I go in)] or [*prō* + *gradior* > *prōgredior* (I go forward)]. When verbal prefixes were joined to verbs, regressive *assimilation* often occurred: total [*ad* + *loquor* > *alloquor* (I speak to)], or partial [*in* + *pōnō* > *impōnō* (I place onto)].¹⁴⁰
- B. **Verbal Stem** – one of three possible forms of a verb that indicate the core meaning of the verbal form and limit what tense and voice(s) it can be. Each stem can be paired with only specific other morphemes. Taking into account sound changes produced by contact between the various morphemes, most tense stems are derived fairly regularly from the 2nd principal part.

¹³⁶ The method of combining stems, suffixes, and endings into particular forms is termed *inflection*. The inflection of a verb is termed *conjugation*, while the inflection of nouns and adjectives is termed *declension*.

¹³⁷ PIE had essentially two conjugations: *Thematic* verbs (those that had a vowel between the stem and the ending) and *Athematic* verbs (those that did not). In Latin, the four conjugations are derived from the *Thematic* PIE verbs; verbs derived from the *Athematic* PIE verbs are rare in Latin and are typically (but wrongly) termed irregular verbs: i.e. [*esse*, *ferre*, *velle*, *īre*, *dare*].

¹³⁸ Latin deponent verbs often describe action done for personal interest or to be done by the subject to itself, and they are largely a remnant of the PIE *Mediopassive* voice that is more completely preserved in Ancient Greek.

¹³⁹ [*audeō*, *audēre*, *ausus sum*]; [*gaudeō*, *gaudēre*, *gāvīsus sum*]; [*soleō*, *solēre*, *solitus sum*]; [*fidō*, *fidere*, *fīsus sum*]

¹⁴⁰ Transitive prefixed verbal forms, in addition to a *Direct Object*, were often construed with substantives in the case typically construed with the independent preposition: e.g. [*expellō eum cīvitātē*] (I drive him from the state). Prepositions were often repeated: e.g. [*expellō eum ē cīvitātē*]. Intransitive prefixed verbal forms, especially those with [*ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*], were typically construed with the *Dative of Reference*: [*Brūtus obsequitur Caesarī*] (Brutus yields to Caesar).

1. **Thematic (Regular) verbs**, which are by far the most common type, have a thematic vowel added to a verbal stem. Vowel contraction has obscured the unity of the *Thematic* verbs in Latin, resulting in five apparently different conjugations with the characteristic stem-vowels: [ā , ē , e , ī , i].
 - a. **Inflix** – a few verbs have the *Present* system inflix [-n-] within all forms derived from the *Present* stem: e.g. [vīncō , vīncere] but [vīcī , victum], [rūmpō , rūmpere , rūpī , ruptum].
2. **Athematic (Irregular) verbs** have no thematic vowel and were all but lost in Latin. The ending is joined directly to the verbal stem. Despite the common name for these verbs, there is little that is truly irregular about their formation. The crucial verb “to be” [*esse*] is an *Athematic* verb.
- C. **Suffix** - a morpheme that goes after the stem and that indicates *tense*, *mood*, *voice*, or other factors: e.g. the [-rē-] of the *Imperfect Subjunctive*. Vowel contraction obscures the original form of some suffixes: e.g. the present *Subjunctive* suffix combined with the stem vowel of the *Present* stem resulted in an apparently different versions of the *Subjunctive* suffix for the four conjugations: e.g. [am-ē-mus] but [leg-ā-mus]. A few suffixes alter the basic meaning of the stem: e.g. *Inchoative* [nō-sc-it] (he begins to know), *Iterative* [dic-t-a-t] (he constantly says), *Intensive* [fac-ess-i-t] (he does eagerly).
- D. **Ending** – morphemes that go at the end of a verbal form and that indicate (for a verb) the *person*, *number*, and usually *voice*, or (for a participle) the *case*, *number*, and *gender*. Only specific suffixes and endings can be combined with each particular stem: e.g. the ending [-mus] indicating 1st person, plural, *Active* cannot be attached to the *Perfect Passive* participle stem. Note that the [-ā-] of [amā-mus] for example, or the [-ē-] of [habē-mus] does not belong to the ending; they are part of the stem.

4.3 **VERB ENDINGS:** For the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive*, there are only twenty-one verb endings in Classical Latin usage (6 active, 6 passive, 6 *Perfect*, 3 alternate): e.g. the letter sequences [-mus , -bāmus , -rēmus , -bimus , -erāmus , -erīmus , -issēmus] are not distinct endings; they are all just the ending [-mus] with or without another suffix preceding it [-mus , -bā-mus , -rē-mus , -bi-mus , -erā-mus , -erī-mus , -issē-mus].

- A. *Present Active* endings: [-ō / -m , -s , -t ; -mus , -tis , -nt] These endings are used for all tenses of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive* in the *Active* voice, with the exception of the *Perfect Active Indicative*. The 1st person singular [-ō] occurs only in the *Present* / *Future* / *Future-Perfect Active Indicative* forms; all other forms use [-m].
- B. *Present Passive* endings: [-or , -ris (-re) , -tur ; -mur , -minī , -ntur] These endings are used for all *Present system Indicative* and *Subjunctive* forms in the *Passive* voice. In the *Perfect system*, all *Passive* forms are periphrastic. The Archaic Latin 2nd singular ending [-re] was often used in poetry *metricae causā* and to give an archaizing tone to the verse.
- C. *Perfect Active Indicative* endings: [-ī , -istī , -it ; -imus , -istis , -ērunt (-ēre)] These endings are used only for the *Perfect Active Indicative*. The Archaic Latin 3rd plural *Perfect Active Indicative* ending [-ēre] was often used in poetry *metricae causā* and to give an archaizing tone to the verse.

4.4 **LINGUISTIC CHANGE AND VARIATION IN VERBAL FORMS:** Vowel length and quality are as significant as other variations in spelling and are often the only way to tell particular forms apart; however, several phonetic processes can obscure the actual regularity of Latin morphology, when specific phonemes are brought into juxtaposition due to the combination of prefixes, stems, suffixes, and endings.

- A. **Vowel Shortening:** *Long by Nature* vowels are shortened when they come before the endings [-ō , -m , -t , -nt , -r , -ntur], before the suffixes [-nt- , -nd-], or before any other vowel.
- B. **Vowel Weakening:** When stems and affixes are joined, an internal vowel may undergo an change in quality (not quantity) termed vowel weakening: e.g. [in + grādior > ingredior (I go in)], [lege + -s >

legis]. The weakened vocalic sound will typically retain the quantity of the original phoneme: e.g. [ob + caedō > occīdō] but [ob + cadō > occidō].

- C. **Vowel Contraction:** When two vowels are brought into juxtaposition, they may contract into a single sound: e.g. [lege-ō > legō], [co-agō > cōgō]. This contracted sound will preserve the quality of the original vowels and be *Long by Nature*: [nihīl > nīl], [ne-hēmō > nēmō], [*co-itus > coetus].
- D. **Compensatory Lengthening:** When phonemes or aspects of a phoneme are lost due to the combination of stems and affixes, a short vowel in the previous syllable is often lengthened.
1. **Loss of Phoneme:** When [s] is lost due to a following voiced consonant [b, d, g]: e.g. [dīs-dūcō > dī-dūcō], [dīs-gredior > dī-gredior].¹⁴¹ When a dental [d, t] is lost before [s]: e.g. [ped-s > pēs], [regēns, regentis].
 2. **Loss of Voicing:** When a verbal stem ending in a voiced consonant [b, d, g] is combined with the morpheme of the *Perfect* passive participle: [ag-t-us > āc-t-us].
- E. **Analogy** – Systematic sound changes sometimes produce a paradigm that superficially seemed not to follow the rules (νόμοι) of its conjugation or declension, especially at the intersections of different morphemes; this effect is termed *Anomaly* (ἀνωμαλία). When confronted by such forms, Ancient Latin speakers might employ an internal grammar extrapolated from personal experience to make the paradigm uniform using a process of analogical reasoning.¹⁴² Such innovated forms could in turn lead to systematic transformation of morphology and syntax, if the verbal habit spread.¹⁴³
- F. **Innovated Tenses** – Proto-Indo-European did not have a *Future* tense. The Latin *Future* tense is an innovation with two distinct sources, and ancient Latin speakers did not feel compelled to create/use this innovated tense in the Latin *Subjunctive* mood. The *Imperfect*, *Future-Perfect*, and the *Pluperfect* tenses are similarly innovative and lack infinitives and participles. Many Latin verbal morphemes nevertheless derive from PIE sources.
1. *Future Indicative* Tense Morpheme of 1st and 2nd Conjugation [-bō/-bi-/bu-]: The source of the [-b-] in this morpheme is the same PIE root [*b^huH-] (become) that gave rise to the *Imperfect* morpheme [-bā-] as well as to [fu-], the *Perfect* stem of [esse], and to the English verb “be.” The ablauting vowel of [-bō/-bi-/bu-] is derived from the PIE *Subjunctive* morpheme and is also seen in the *Future* forms of [esse].
 2. *Future Indicative* Tense Morpheme of 3rd and 4th Conjugation [ē]: The source of the [-ē-] in this morpheme is derived from the PIE *Subjunctive* morpheme; the [a] of the 1st person singular is of unknown origin, but likely evolved (through dissimulation) to avoid confusion with the *Present* 1st person singular, since [-ē-ō] would have resulted in [-ō] through contraction.
 3. *Imperfect Indicative* Tense Morpheme [-bā-]: The source of the [-b-] in this morpheme is the same PIE root [*b^huH-], while the [-ā-] is the ā-preterite indicating past time that also occurs in the *Pluperfect Indicative*. The PIE *Imperfect* formation is not seen in Latin.
 4. *Pluperfect Indicative* Tense Morpheme [-erā-]: The source of the [-er-] in this form is the *Perfect* morpheme [*-is-] that has undergone rhotacism and vowel weakening, while the [-ā-] is the ā-preterite indicating past time that also occurs in the *Imperfect Indicative*.

¹⁴¹ The voiceless [s] cannot undergo regressive assimilation before the voiced [b, d, g] because there is no voiced fricative [z] in Latin. The [z] is a phoneme found only in Greek and Etruscan loan words.

¹⁴² Children will invariably generate forms like “oxes” or “childs” on analogy from “foxes” and “cats”. When such forms gain currency, a language change occurs: e.g. in American English, the *incorrect* form “focuses” is replacing the *correct* form “foci”.

¹⁴³ The [-u-nt] of the 3rd person plural *Perfect* ending [-ērunt], for instance, was added to the archaic 3rd person plural *Perfect* ending [-ēre], by analogy to other tenses, where the 3rd person plural [-u-nt] properly belongs.

5. *Imperfect Subjunctive* Tense Morpheme [-rē-]: The [-r-] in this form has undergone rhotacism while the [-ē-] is derived from the PIE *Optative* morpheme; this morpheme indicating past time and irrealis also occurs in the *Pluperfect Subjunctive*.
6. *Pluperfect Subjunctive* Tense Morpheme [-issē-]: The source of the [-is-] in this form is the same *Perfect* morpheme [*-is-] seen in the *Pluperfect Indicative*, while the [-sē-] is the same morpheme derived from the PIE *Optative* morpheme indicating past time and irrealis that also occurs in the *Imperfect Subjunctive*. Neither of these morphemes undergoes rhotacism, since neither [s] is between two vocalic sounds.
7. *Future-Perfect Indicative* Tense Morpheme [-eri-]: The source of the [-is-] in this form is the same *Perfect* morpheme [*-is-] seen in other tenses and moods of the *Perfect* system, while the [-i-] is derived from the PIE *Subjunctive* morpheme seen in other *Future Indicative* forms.
8. *Perfect Subjunctive* Tense Morpheme [-erī-]: The source of the [-is-] in this form is the same *Perfect* morpheme [*-is-] seen in other tenses and moods of the *Perfect* system, while the [-ī-] is derived from the PIE athematic *Optative* morpheme indicating irrealis that also occurs in the *Imperfect Subjunctive*.

G. **Dialects** – The processes of linguistic change operated somewhat differently in the various Latin dialects, across spatial and temporal distance. Cf. Section 1.12.

H. **Suppletive Verbs** – a very small number of verbs use stems from more than one PIE verbal root to substitute for their inflected forms, usually for different tenses. The verb “to bear,” for example, has the *Present* [ferō] but *Perfect* [tulī] and *Perfect* passive participle [latus], each from a different PIE root.

4.5 [**ESSE**]: The verb [esse] is crucial to the conjugation of Latin verbs, since the Latin *Perfect Passive System* is entirely periphrastic: i.e. each verb is composed of a *Perfect Passive* participle paired with the appropriate form of the verb [esse]: e.g. [amātus sum]. Unlike the vast majority of Latin verbs, [esse] is an *Athematic* verb, and it has a number of peculiarities in the *Present System*. In the *Perfect System*, [esse] is formed regularly from the stem [fu-]. The *Present* stem is [es-], and there are no *Passive* forms:

- A. *Present Indicative*: [sum , es , est ; sumus , estis , sunt] – a number of alterations have occurred due to analogy, making this the only tense of [esse] with actual irregularities.
- B. *Present Subjunctive*: [sim , sīs , sit ; sīmus , sītis , sint] – a short form of the *Present* stem [s-] has been joined to the *Subjunctive* suffix [-ī-] with the endings [-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt].
- C. *Imperfect Indicative*: [eram , erās , erat ; erāmus , erātis , erant] – the stem [es-] has undergone *rhotacism* changing it to [er-]. The *Athematic* suffix [-ā-] is the same ā-preterite found in the *Thematic Imperfect* [-bā-].¹⁴⁴
- D. *Imperfect Subjunctive*: [essem , essēs , esset ; essemus , essētis , essent] – the stem [es-] has been joined to the suffix [-sē-], which is the same seen in the *Thematic Imperfect Subjunctive* suffix [-rē-], where *rhotacism* has occurred.
- E. *Future Indicative*: [erō , eris , erit ; erimus , eritis , erunt] – the stem [es-] has undergone *rhotacism* changing it to [er-]. The ablauting *Athematic Future* suffix [-ō / -ī / -u-] is the same as found in the *Thematic Future Indicative* suffix [-bō / -bi- / -bu-].

4.6 **VERBAL FORMS**: Verbal nouns and verbal adjectives indicate their verbal properties (*tense, voice*) by the stem and suffix used, but their substantive properties (*case, number, and gender*) by specific

¹⁴⁴ The source of the [-b-] in this form is the same PIE root [*b^huH-] (become) that gave rise to the *Perfect* stem of [esse], i.e. [fu-], to the *Future* suffix [-bo , -bi- , -bu-] and to the English verb “be.”

declensional endings. These verbal nouns and adjectives are generally able to attract the same constructions and case usages as the finite verb from which they are formed: e.g. if the active verb can attract a *Direct Object*, so can the active participles, the active infinitive, the gerund, and the supine.

- A. **Participles** [Verbal Adjectives] are adjectives of the 1st/2nd or the 3rd declensional systems that take their tense and voice from the verbal stem on which they are built, in conjunction with the *Present Active* suffix [-nt-], the *Perfect Passive* suffix [-t-], and the *Future Active* suffix [-tūr-]. As adjectives, participles can be declined in the comparative and superlative degrees.
- B. **Gerundives** [Verbal Adjectives] are adjectives of the 1st/2nd declensional system built on the *Present* stem and using the suffix [-nd-] that are *Future* in sense, *Passive* in voice, and have modal force. Note that a gerundive is not simply a *Future Passive Participle*, since it indicates what ought to be done rather than what is actually about to be done. In finite verbs, the presense of this modal force (should, ought) is the distinction between the *Subjunctive* and the *Indicative*.
- C. **Infinitives** [Verbal Nouns] are neuter, singular, nouns occurring only in the *nominative* and *accusative* cases that use the suffixes [-re , -rī] on the *Present* stem, [-isse] on the *Perfect Active* stem, or are formed periphrastically by combining a participle or gerundive with the infinitives [esse] or [īrī]. As with all neuter nouns, the *nominative* and *accusative* forms of the infinitive are the same morphologically.
- D. **Gerunds** [Verbal Nouns] are neuter, singular, nouns of the 2nd declension occurring only in the *accusative*, *genitive*, *dative*, and *ablative* cases with *Active* voice built on the *Present* stem and using the suffix [-nd-].¹⁴⁵ The gerund exists in a complimentary relationship with the infinitive and the supine to supply all of the potential case usages of a verbal noun; the gerund thus has no need of the *nominative* case, since all *nominative* functions are supplied by the infinitive. The *accusative* gerund is only found with the preposition [ad] to express purpose; all other *accusative* functions are supplied by the infinitive.
- E. **Supines** [Verbal Nouns] are masculine, singular, nouns of the 4th declension occurring only in the *accusative* and *ablative* cases with *Active* voice built on the *Supine* stem, and using the suffix [-t-]. When construed with a verb implying motion, the supine is used as an *Accusative of Orientation* to show the purpose of the motion, and it is used as an *Ablative of Respect* to indicate in what way an adjective holds true.¹⁴⁶ The *ablative* supine is uncommon except: [dictū , factū , vīsū , audītū , nātū , inventū , memorātū]. In Archaic Latin, a *dative* form [-uī] also occurs. It is not securely known whether this *dative* is the origin of the supine in [-ū]; however, the Classical usage indicates that the supine in [-ū] was considered an *ablative* synchronically

¹⁴⁵ *Gerund as Ablative of Location* – Caes. Gall. 4.32: tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo occupatos subito adorti paucis interfectis reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant... (Then, having suddenly come upon the men dispersed - with arms laid aside - and occupied in the act of sowing, with a few having been killed, they threw the rest into disorder in their indefinite ranks...). Although the gerund can take a *Direct Object* [ad dēlendum Carthāginem], a gerundive in agreement with the noun is generally preferred in literary usage [ad Carthāginem dēlendam].

¹⁴⁶ *Supine as Accusative of Orientation* – Caes. Gall. 1.11: Haedui, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: (The Aedui, since they were not able to defend themselves and their things from those men, sent ambassadors to Caesar in order to request assistance:) The supine *rogatum* modifies the verb *mittunt*, explaining why the ambassadors were sent. *Supine as Ablative of Respect* – Caes. Gall. 1.3: Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, ... (He proved to them that to complete the things attempted was very easy to do, ...). The supine *factu* modifies the adjective *perfacile*, explaining in exactly what way it will be easy. The *accusative* supine may take a *Direct Object*, but the *ablative* supine never does.

4.7 PERFECT ACTIVE SYSTEM: The 3rd principal part is the source of the *Perfect Active* stem, which has four main modes of formation. The Latin *Perfect Active* was an amalgam of an innovated Latin suffix [-v-] and PIE *Perfect* and *Aorist* forms. In order of decreasing frequency:

- A. **The suffix [-v-]:** This suffix is a Latin innovation that appears as a consonant between two vowels or as a vowel otherwise, since it is a glide.
1. [-v-] Virtually all 1st conjugation and most 4th conjugation verbs add the *Perfect* suffix [-v-] to the *Present* stem (after its characteristic stem vowel) to form the *Perfect* stem: e.g. *Present* [amā-mus] versus *Perfect* [amā-v-imus], *Present* [audī-mus] versus *Perfect* [audī-v-imus].¹⁴⁷
 2. [-u-] Most 2nd conjugation verbs have the vocalic form of the glide [-u-] in place of the characteristic [-ē-] of their stem: e.g. *Present* [habē-mus] versus *Perfect* [hab-u-imus].¹⁴⁸ A few verbs of the other declensions also use the [-u-] form of the suffix in place of their characteristic stem vowel.
- B. **The suffix [-s-]:** Most 3rd conjugation verbs form the *Perfect* stem by adding the *Perfect* suffix [-s-] directly to the *Present* stem without the thematic vowel: e.g. *Present* [dīc-ō] versus *Perfect* [dīx-ī (dīc-s-ī)], *Present* [rēp-i-mus] versus *Perfect* [rēp-s-imus]. A few 2nd and 4th conjugation verbs have [-s-] in place of their characteristic stem vowel.¹⁴⁹ This suffix was originally a PIE *Aorist* tense suffix; this tense was lost in Latin.
- C. **Reduplication:** A small number of verbs form the *Perfect* stem by a *reduplication* of the initial consonant followed by [e]: e.g. *Present* [d-ō] versus *Perfect* [de-d-ī], *Present* [can-ō] versus *Perfect* [ce-cin-ī]. This is the standard method of forming the *Perfect* tense in Classical Greek and in PIE.
- D. **Stem Ablaut:** A few verbs form the *Perfect* stem with a different ablaut grade of the *Present* stem: e.g. *Present* [fugi-ō] versus *Perfect* [fūg-ī], *Present* [ag-ō] versus *Perfect* [ēg-ī]. Many stems and suffixes of PIE verbs showed systematic alternations in their vocalic elements. This is the method of forming the *Thematic Aorist* in Classical Greek and PIE.

¹⁴⁷ Exceptions like [crep-ō, crepā-re, crep-u-ī, crepi-t-um] are: [cubā-re], [domā-re], [fricā-re], [micā-re], [secā-re], [sonā-re], [vetā-re].

¹⁴⁸ Exceptions like [dele-ō, delē-re, delē-v-ī, delē-t-um] are: [nē-re], [flē-re], [ciē-re], [-plē-re], [-olē-re].

¹⁴⁹ Like [iube-ō, iubē-re, ius-s-ī, ius-s-um] are: [ardē-re], [rīdē-re], [haerē-re], [manē-re], [suādē-re]. Like [senti-ō, sentī-re, sen-s-ī, sen-s-um] are: [saepī-re], [sancī-re], [vincī-re], [farcī-re], [fulcī-re], [haurī-re], and others.

4.8 THEMATIC VERBS:

The Thematic verbs constitute all but a handful of verbs in Ancient Latin, and are distinguished by having an ablauting thematic vowel [-e/o-] between the stem and the suffix(es).

- ❖ The majority of Thematic verbs appear to have stems ending in [ā – 1st conjugation], [ē – 2nd conjugation], or [ī – 4th conjugation]. These long vowels are the result of vowel contraction between the thematic vowel [-e/o-] and three vocalic suffixes, with the result that the thematic vowel is obscured.
- ❖ Some Thematic verbs have stems that end in the bare thematic vowel: the 3rd conjugation. Vowel weakening has altered the original form [-e/o-] to [-i/u-] in most instances.¹⁵⁰ Although fewer in absolute number than the other conjugations, many of the verbs of the 3rd conjugation were in very frequent use: e.g. *dīcere*, *dūcere*, *legere*, *vehere*, *et cetera*.

Example Thematic verb: [amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum]

1st PRINCIPAL PART - **amō** (1st person, singular, *present*, active, indicative): In combination with the 2nd principle part, the 1st indicates to which of the four conjugations a verb belongs. Verbs are often listed in dictionaries by their 1st principle part and the final three letters of their 2nd principle part: e.g. [amo, -āre]. If so, form them as indicated below. The 3rd and 4th principle parts of verbs will only be listed in a dictionary if they are "irregular."

Active Verbs

1 st conjugation:	-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
2 nd conjugation:	-eō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
3 rd conjugation:	-ō, -ere, -???, -tum/-sum ¹⁵¹
3 rd -iō conjugation:	-iō, -ere, -???, -tum/-sum
4 th conjugation:	-iō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum

Deponent Verbs

-or, -ārī, -ātum
-eor, -ērī, -itum
-or, -ī, -tum/-sum
-ior, -ī, -tum/-sum
-ior, -īrī, -ītum

2nd PRINCIPAL PART - **amāre** (*present*, active, infinitive): [present stem: **amā-**].

All verbal forms of the *Present System* (both *Active* and *Passive*) come from the 2nd principal part.

1. [**amā-mus**] *Present* active indicative verbs: are formed by adding the *Present* active endings to the *Present* stem: [-ō , -s , -t ; -mus , -tis , -nt]¹⁵² (we love)
2. [**am-ē-mus**] *Present* active subjunctive verbs are formed by adding the *Subjunctive* suffix to the *Present* stem, resulting in vowel contraction with the characteristic stem vowel in the 1st and the 3rd conjugations: [1st amā- > am-ē-; 2nd habē- > habe-ā-; 3rd legi- > leg-ā-; 4th dormi- > dormi-ā-.] Note that the characteristic stem vowel in the 2nd and the 4th conjugations is shortened. (context determines *Subjunctive* translation)

¹⁵⁰ Altered: [*reg-e-tis > reg-i-tis], [*reg-o-nt > reg-u-nt]; unaltered [reg-e], [reg-e-nt-is].

¹⁵¹ The [-ere] of the 3rd conjugation is short in contrast to the [-ēre] of the 2nd conjugation; in addition, rather than tense suffix [-v-] as in other conjugations, the 3rd principal part of 3rd conjugation verbs frequently having the *Perfect* suffix [-s-] as in [dūcō, dūcere, dūxī (dūc-s-ī), ductum], reduplication [canō, canere, cecinī, cantum], stem ablaut [fugio, fugere, fūgī, fugitum], or no stem change or tense suffix [bibō, bibere, bibī, –].

¹⁵² The characteristic stem vowel in the 1st and the 3rd conjugations undergoes vowel contraction with [-ō]: e.g. [amā-ō > amō], [dīce-ō > dīcō].

3. [**amā-te**] Present active imperative verbs are formed by adding [—, -Ø, —; —, -te, —] to the *Present* stem: i.e. the bare *Present* stem is used for the singular. (you (pl) love!)¹⁵³
4. [**ama-nt-em**] Present active participles (verbal adjectives) are formed by adding the suffix [**-nt-**]¹⁵⁴ and 3rd declension “i-stem” case endings to the *Present* stem: e.g. [amā-n[**t**]-s, ama-nt-is, ama-nt-ī]. The ablative singular is [-ī] for adjectival and [-e] for verbal and *Ablative Absolute* usage. ((the person) loving)
5. [**amā-re**] Present active infinitives (verbal nouns) are formed by adding the suffix [**-re**] to the *Present* stem. Infinitives are neuter, singular, and occur only in the *nominative* and the *accusative*. (to love)
6. [**ama-nd-um**] Gerunds (active verbal nouns) are formed by adding the suffix [**-nd-**]¹⁵⁵ and the 2nd declension case endings [-um, -ī, -ō, -ō] to the *Present* stem. All gerunds are neuter and singular; no *nominative* exists. ((the act of) loving)
7. [**amā-bā-mus**] Imperfect active indicative verbs are formed by adding the suffix [**-bā-**]¹⁵⁶ to the *Present* stem using the *Present* active endings [-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt]. (he was loving)
8. [**amā-rē-mus**] Imperfect active subjunctive verbs are formed by adding the suffix [**-rē-**] to the *Present* stem using the *Present* active endings [-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt].¹⁵⁷
9. [**amā-bi-mus**] Future active indicative verbs (we will love)
 - a. 1st and 2nd conjugation verbs add the *Future* suffix [**-bo/i-u-**] to the *Present* stem using the *Present Active* endings [-ō, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt]. Vowel contraction (-bo-ō > bō) and vowel weakening (-bo-nt > bunt) result in the forms [**-b-ō, -bi-s, -bi-t; -bi-mus, -bi-tis, -bu-nt**].
 - b. 3rd and 4th conjugation verbs add the *Future* suffix [-a-, -ē-, -ē-; -ē-, -ē-, -ē-] and then the *Present* active endings [-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt] to the *Present* stem.¹⁵⁸
10. [**amā-tōte**] Future active imperative verbs are formed by adding the *Future Active Imperative* endings [—, -tō, -tō; —, -tōte, -ntō] to the *Present* stem.¹⁵⁹ (you (pl) go on and love!)
11. [**amā-mur**] Present passive indicative verbs are formed by adding the *Present* passive endings to the *Present* stem: [-or, -ris (-re), -tur; -mur, -minī, -ntur]. (we are loved)
12. [**am-ē-mur**] Present passive subjunctive verbs are formed by adding the *Present* passive endings to the *Present* stem, after its characteristic stem vowel has been combined with the *Subjunctive* suffix: [1st amā- > am-ē-; 2nd habē- > habe-ā-; 3rd legi- > leg-ā-; 4th dormī- > dormi-ā-].¹⁶⁰

¹⁵³ The 3rd conjugation shown vowel weakening in its stem vowel in the plural: singular pone, but plural poni-te. There are a few irregular singular imperative forms: [dūcere > dūc], [facere > fac], [dīcere > dīc], and [ferre > fer].

¹⁵⁴ For the 4th and 3rd (-io) conjugations, the *Present Active* participle suffix is prefixed with an [-e-]: e.g. [faci-**e**-nt-is]. Note that the suffix [**-nt-**] shortens any vowel coming before it; the morpheme [**-ns**] does not shorten vowels coming before it.

¹⁵⁵ For the 4th and 3rd (-io) conjugations, the gerund suffix is prefixed with an [-e-]: e.g. [faci-**e**-nd-um]. Note that the suffix [**-nd-**] shortens any vowel coming before it.

¹⁵⁶ For the 4th and 3rd (-io) conjugations, the *Imperfect* suffix is prefixed with an [-ē-]: e.g. [faci-**ē**-bā-tis].

¹⁵⁷ Note that the *Imperfect* subjunctive suffix [**-rē-**] has a long [ē], unlike the *Present Active* infinitive suffix [-re].

¹⁵⁸ The thematic vowel of the 3rd conjugation is contracted with the *Future* suffix: e.g. lege-ē-mus > legēmus. The 4th conjugation retains its stem characteristic [-ī-], shortened before the *Future* suffix: e.g. dormī-ē-mus > dormi-ē-mus. The Latin *Future* in the 3rd and 4th conjugations is derived from the PIE *Subjunctive*, since PIE had no *Future* tense.

¹⁵⁹ For the 3rd conjugation, the stem vowel undergoes vowel weakening: e.g. [poni-tō, ponu-ntō]; for the 4th and 3rd (-io) conjugations, the *Future Imperative* suffix is prefixed with an [-u-] in the 3rd person plural: e.g. [audi-u-ntō].

¹⁶⁰ Note that the characteristic stem vowel in the 2nd and the 4th conjugations is shortened before the *Subjunctive* suffix.

13. [**amā-re**] Present passive imperative verbs are formed by adding [—, -re , — ; —, -minī, —] to the *Present* stem.¹⁶¹ (be loved!)
14. [**amā-rī**] Present passive infinitives (verbal nouns) are formed by adding [-rī] to the *Present* stem. 3rd conjugation verbs substitute an [-ī] for [-rī] sīc: ducere (active), ducī (passive).¹⁶² (to be loved)
15. [**amā-bā-mur**] Imperfect passive indicative verbs are formed by adding the suffix [-bā-]¹⁶³ to the *Present* stem using the *Present* passive endings. (we were being loved)
16. [**amā-rē-mur**] Imperfect passive subjunctive verbs are formed by adding the suffix [-rē-] to the *Present* stem using the *Present* passive endings [-r , -ris (-re) , -tur ; -mur , -minī , -ntur].
17. [**amā-bi-mur**] Future passive indicative verbs (we will be loved)
 - a. 1st and 2nd conjugation verbs add the *Future* suffix [-bo/i/u-] to the *Present* stem using the *Present* *Passive* endings. The ablauting thematic vowel of the *Future* suffix undergoes vowel weakening (-bi-ris > -beris) result in the forms [-bo-r, -**be**-ris, -bi-tur; -bi-mur, -bi-minī, -bu-ntur].
 - b. 3rd and 4th conjugation verbs add the *Future* suffix [-a- , -ē- , -ē- ; -ē- , -ē- , -ē-] and then the *Present* *Passive* endings [-r , -ris (-re) , -tur ; -mur , -minī , -ntur] to the *Present* stem.¹⁶⁴
18. [**amā-tor**] Future passive imperative verbs are formed by adding the *Future* *Passive* *Imperative* endings [—, -tor , -tor; —, -minī, -ntor] to the *Present* stem.¹⁶⁵ (go on and be loved!)
19. [**ama-nd-us**] Gerundives (passive verbal adjectives) are formed by adding the suffix [-nd-]¹⁶⁶ and 1st/2nd declension case endings to the *Present* stem. (needing to be loved ; about to be loved)¹⁶⁷
20. [**ama-nd-ī su-mus**] Passive Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by the pairing of the gerundive with a form of [esse]. (we are needing to be loved ≈ we need to be loved, we must be loved.)

3rd PRINCIPAL PART - **amāvī** (1st person, singular, *perfect*, active, indicative): [*Perfect* stem: **amā-v-**]
 All verbal forms of the *Perfect Active System* are formed from the 3rd principal part.¹⁶⁸

1. [**amā-v-imus**] Perfect active indicative verbs are formed by the addition of the *Perfect* active endings [-ī , -istī , -it ; -imus , -istis , -ērunt (-ēre)] to the *Perfect* stem.¹⁶⁹ (he loved; he did love; he has loved)

¹⁶¹ The 3rd conjugation shifts its stem vowel to [-i-] in the plural thus: singular ponē-re, but plural ponī-minī.

¹⁶² The Archaic Latin passive infinitive ending [-ier] was sometimes used in poetry *metricae causā* and to give an archaizing tone.

¹⁶³ For the 4th and 3rd (-io) conjugations, the *Imperfect* suffix is prefixed with an [-ē-]: e.g. [faci-ē-bā-minī].

¹⁶⁴ The thematic vowel of the 3rd conjugation is contracted with the *Future* suffix: e.g. lege-ē-mur > leg-ē-mur. The characteristic [-ī-] of the 4th conjugation is shortened before the *Future* suffix: e.g. dormī-ē-mur > dormi-ē-mur.

¹⁶⁵ For the 3rd conjugation, the stem vowel undergoes vowel weakening: e.g. [ponī-tor, ponū-ntor]; for the 4th and 3rd (-io) conjugations, the *Future* *Imperative* suffix is prefixed with an [-u-] in the 3rd person plural: e.g. [audi-u-ntor].

¹⁶⁶ For the 4th and 3rd (-io) conjugations, the gerundive suffix is prefixed with an [-e-]: e.g. [faci-ē-nd-us]. Note that the suffix [-nd-] shortens any vowel coming before it.

¹⁶⁷ The Gerundive is sometimes termed a *Future* passive participle; however, the gerundive typically has a modal force (like the *Subjunctive* mood) expressing what should be done rather than what is actually being done, as in the case of ordinary participles.

¹⁶⁸ Cf. section IV above for the methods of forming the *Perfect Active* stem in the addition of the suffix [-v-]; the other modes affect only the stem, not the suffixes or endings: e.g. [dīx-isse , cecin-isse , fūg-isse]. Note that except where the result would be ambiguous, the [-v-] of the *Perfect Active* stem may drop out (syncopation), resulting in vowel contraction: e.g. [amā-v-isse > amā-isse > amāsse], [amā-v-erit > amā-erit > amārit], but [abī-v-it > abi-it].

¹⁶⁹ The Archaic Latin 3rd plural *Perfect Active Indicative* ending [-ēre] was often used in poetry *metricae causā* and to give an archaizing tone to the verse. [-ēre] is often incorrectly termed a syncopated ending, as if it came from [-ērunt].

2. [**amā-v-erī-mus**] Perfect active subjunctive verbs add the suffix [**-erī-**] to the *Perfect* stem resulting in [-erī-m, -erī-s, -erī-t; -erī-mus, -erī-tis, -erī-nt] due to vowel shortening before [-m, -t, -nt]. Notā bene: the *Perfect active Subjunctive* and the *Future-Perfect active Indicative* differ morphologically only in the 1st person singular ending and in the presence of the [**-ī-**] in the *Subjunctive*.
3. [**amā-v-erā-mus**] Pluperfect active indicative verbs are formed by the addition of the suffix [**-erā-**] to the *Perfect* stem using the endings [-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt]. (he had loved)
4. [**amā-v-issē-mus**] Pluperfect active subjunctive verbs add the suffix [**-issē-**] to the *Perfect* stem using the endings [-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt].¹⁷⁰
5. [**amā-v-eri-mus**] Future-Perfect active indicative verbs add the suffix [**-eri-**] to the *Perfect* stem resulting in [-er-ō, -eri-s, -eri-t; -eri-mus, -eri-tis, -eri-nt]. (he shall have loved)¹⁷¹
6. [**amā-v-isse**] Perfect active infinitives (verbal nouns) are formed by the addition of [**-isse**] to the *Perfect* stem. (to have loved)

4th PRINCIPAL PART - **amātum** (the *supine* - accusative, singular, neuter): [supine stem: **amā-t-**]

All verbal forms of the *Perfect Passive System* are formed from the 4th principal part, and the large majority are *Periphrastic*.¹⁷²

1. [**amā-t-ī su-mus**] Perfect passive indicative verbs are formed by pairing the *Perfect Passive* participle with the *Present Indicative* forms of [*esse*]: [sum, es, est; sumus, estis, sunt]. (we were loved)
2. [**amā-t-ī sī-mus**] Perfect passive subjunctive verbs are formed by pairing the *Perfect* passive participle with the *Present Subjunctive* forms of [*esse*]: [sim, sīs, sit; sīmus, sītis, sint].
3. [**amā-t-us**] Perfect passive participles (verbal adjectives) are formed by adding 1st/2nd declension case endings to the supine stem. ((he) having been loved)
4. [**amā-t-um esse**] Perfect passive infinitives (verbal nouns) are formed by the pairing of an *accusative* or *nominative* form of the *Perfect Passive* participle with [*esse*]. As a verbal adjective, the participle agrees with the subject of [*esse*] in case, number, and gender. (to have been loved)
5. [**amā-t-ī erā-mus**] Pluperfect passive indicative verbs are formed by pairing the *Perfect Passive* participle with the *Imperfect Indicative* forms of [*esse*]: [eram, erās, erat; erāmus, erātis, erant]. (we had been loved)
6. [**amā-t-ī essē-mus**] Pluperfect passive subjunctive verbs are formed by pairing the *Perfect Passive* participle with the *Imperfect Subjunctive* forms of [*esse*]: [essem, essēs, esset; essēmus, essētis, essent].
7. [**amā-t-ī eri-mus**] Future-Perfect passive indicative verbs are formed by the pairing of the *Perfect Passive* participle with the *Future* forms of [*esse*]: [erō, eris, erit; erimus, eritis, erunt]. (we shall have been loved)

¹⁷⁰ Note that the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* suffix [**-issē-**] has a long [ē], unlike the *Perfect Active Infinitive* suffix [**-isse**].

¹⁷¹ Note that the *Future-Perfect Active* suffix [**-eri-**] has a short [**-i-**], unlike *Perfect Active Subjunctive* suffix [**-erī-**].

¹⁷² The periphrastic forms pair the *Perfect* active participle (in agreement with the subject in case, number, and gender) and a form of the verb “to be” [*esse*] appropriate to the tense or mood intended. A periphrastic form is composed of more than a single word and conveys the verbal idea as a circumlocutory phrase, περίφρασις.

8. [**amā-t-um fore**] Future-Perfect passive infinitives (verbal nouns) are formed by the pairing of an *accusative* or *nominative* form of the *Perfect Passive* participle with [fore] (the alternative *Future* infinitive of [esse]). This form is quite rare. As a verbal adjective, the participle agrees with the subject of [esse] in case, number, and gender. (to be about to have been loved)
9. [**amā-t-ū**] Supines (verbal nouns) are formed as masculine, singular, nouns of the 4th declension by adding only the *accusative* ending [-um] or the *ablative* ending [-ū] to the supine stem. [amātum] (for the purpose of loving; in order to love); [amātū] (with respect to loving; in loving; for loving).¹⁷³
10. [**amā-t-um īrī**] Future passive infinitives (verbal nouns) are formed by the pairing of the *accusative* form of the *supine* with [īrī] (the impersonal *Passive* infinitive of [eō, īre]). This form is quite rare. (to be gone for the purpose of loving ≈ to be about to be loved)
11. [**amā-t-ūr-us**] Future active participles (verbal adjectives) are formed by adding the suffix [-ūr-] to the supine stem using the 1st and 2nd declension case endings. ((the man) about to love / going to love)
12. [**amā-t-ūr-um esse**] Future active infinitives (verbal nouns) are formed by the pairing of an *accusative* or *nominative* form of the *Future Active* participle with [esse]. As a verbal adjective, the participle agrees with the subject of [esse] in case, number, and gender. (to be about to love, to be going to love)
13. [**amā-t-ūr-ī su-mus**] Active Periphrastic Conjugation: is formed by the addition of a form of [esse] to the *Future Active* participle. This form is can be used as a periphrasis for the multiple tenses, in both the *Indicative* and the *Subjunctive*, depending on the form of [esse] used.¹⁷⁴ (we are about to love, we are going to love ≈ we will love.)

¹⁷³ The supine occurs in only two case usages: the *Accusative of Orientation* construed with a verb of motion [cīvēs gladiatōrēs spectātum vēnērunt] (the citizens came to see the gladiators); the *Ablative of Respect*, construed with some adjectives [facile dictū] (easy in respect to saying).

¹⁷⁴ The exact semantic force of a periphrastic form is similar but NOT equivalent to the analogous non-periphrastic form, if such a form exists: [amātūri sumus ≈ amābimus, but amātūri sumus ≠ amābimus].

4.9 ATHEMATIC VERBS:

The Athematic verbs constitute only a handful of verbs in Ancient Latin, and are distinguished by lacking an ablauting thematic vowel [-^ε/o-] between the stem and the suffix(es).

- ❖ Although there were far more Athematic verbs in PIE, they have mostly undergone thematization in Latin by analogy with the Thematic verbs. Greek preserves significantly more Athematic forms than Latin.
- ❖ Other than in the *Present* system, Athematic verbs are conjugated just like Thematic verbs.
- ❖ Most Athematic verbs are found only in the *Active* voice.
- ❖ In order to prevent a consonant cluster that would be difficult or impossible to pronounce, the contact of the final consonant on an Athematic stem with the initial consonant some morphemes is avoided through the use of an vowel inserted between the stem and the morpheme; this "placed in" vowel is termed an *Epenthetic Vowel*.

Example Athematic verb: [ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum]

1st PRINCIPAL PART - **ferō** (1st person, singular, *present*, active, indicative): Athematic verbs do not have the ablauting thematic vowel [-^ε/o-] or the denominative suffixes between the stem and the suffix(es) that produce the appearance of four conjugations, thus Athematic verbs do not belong to one of the four Latin "conjugations."

2nd PRINCIPAL PART - **ferre** (*present*, active, infinitive): [present stem: **fer-**].

All verbal forms of the *Present System* come from the 2nd principal part.

1. [**fer-i-mus**] *Present active indicative verbs*: are formed by adding the *Present* active endings to the *Present* stem: [-ō , -s , -t ; -mus , -tis , -nt] (we carry) The 1st person plural forms often show the addition of an epenthetic [-i-] or [-u-] between the stem and the ending; similarly, the 3rd person plural forms often show the addition of an epenthetic [-u-] between the stem and the ending.
2. [**fer-ā-mus**] *Present active subjunctive verbs* are formed by adding the *Subjunctive* suffix to the *Present* stem and then adding the passive endings. [da-re] is formed as it were 1st conjugation. (context determines *Subjunctive* translation)
3. [**fer-te**] *Present active imperative verbs* are formed by adding [—, -Ø , — ; —, -te , —] to the *Present* stem: i.e. the bare *Present* stem is used for the singular. (you (pl) carry!) [nol-le] shows the addition of an epenthetic [-ī-] between the stem and the ending.
4. [**fer-e-nt-em**] *Present active participles* (verbal adjectives) are formed by adding the suffix [-nt-] and 3rd declension "i-stem" case endings to the *Present* stem: e.g. [fer-ē-n[^ε]-s, fer-e-nt-is, fer-e-nt-ī]. The ablative singular is [-ī] for adjectival and [-e] for verbal and *Ablative Absolute* usage. ((the person) carrying) Most athematic verbs have an epenthetic [-ē-] between the stem and the *Present* active participial morpheme [-nt-].
5. [**fer-re**] *Present active infinitives* (verbal nouns) are formed by adding the infinitive suffix [-se] to the *Present* stem. Infinitives are neuter, singular, and occur only in the *nominative* and the *accusative*. (to carry) The [s] of the infinitive suffix [-se-] is typically progressively assimilated to the final consonant of the stem: e.g. [vel-le], but [es-se] is unaltered and [ī-re] shows rhotacism.

6. [**fer-e-nd-um**] Gerunds (active verbal nouns) are formed by adding the suffix [**-nd-**] and the 2nd declension case endings [-um, -ī, -ō, -ō] to the *Present* stem. All gerunds are neuter and singular; no *nominative* exists. ((the act of) carrying) Most *Athematic* verbs are not found in *Gerund* form.¹⁷⁵
7. [**fer-ē-bā-mus**] Imperfect active indicative verbs are formed by adding the suffix [**-bā-**] to the *Present* stem using the *Present* active endings [-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt]. (he was carrying) Most verbs have an epenthetic [-ē-] between the stem and the *Imperfect* morpheme [**-bā-**].
8. [**fer-rē-mus**] Imperfect active subjunctive verbs are formed by adding the suffix [**-sē-**] to the *Present* stem using the *Present* active endings [-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt]. The [s] of the *Imperfect subjunctive* suffix [**-sē-**] is typically progressively assimilated to the final consonant of the stem: e.g. [vel-lē-mus], but [es-sē-mus] is unaltered and [ī-rē-mus] shows rhotacism.
9. [**fer-ē-mus**] Future active indicative verbs are formed much like *Thematic* verbs (we will carry)
 - a. [es-se] adds the *Future* suffix [**-o/i/u-**] to the *Present* stem using the *Present Active* endings [-ō, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt].
 - b. [ī-re] and [da-re] add the *Future* suffix [**-bo/i/u-**] to the *Present* stem using the *Present Active* endings [-ō, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt]. Vowel contraction (-bo-ō > -bō) and vowel weakening (-bo-nt > -bunt) result in the forms [**-b-ō**, -bi-s, -bi-t; -bi-mus, -bi-tis, **-bu-nt**].
 - c. [fer-re], [vel-le], [mal-le], [nol-le], and [fi-e-rī] add the *Future* suffix [**-a-**, **-ē-**, **-ē-**; **-ē-**, **-ē-**, **-ē-**] and then the *Present* active endings [-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt] to the *Present* stem.
10. [**fer-tōte**] Future active imperative verbs are formed by adding the *Future Active Imperative* endings [—, -tō, -tō; —, -tōte, -ntō] to the *Present* stem. (you (pl) go on and carry!) Many *Athematic* verbs are not found in the *Future* active imperative forms.¹⁷⁶
11. [**fer-i-mur**] Present passive indicative verbs are formed by adding the *Present* passive endings to the *Present* stem: [-or, -ris (-re), -tur; -mur, -minī, -ntur]. (we are loved) Only [fer-re] and [da-re] are found in passive forms.¹⁷⁷
12. [**fer-ā-mur**] Present passive subjunctive verbs are formed by adding the *Subjunctive* suffix to the *Present* stem and then adding the passive endings. [da-re] is formed as it it were 1st conjugation.
13. [**fer-re**] Present passive imperative verbs are formed by adding [—, -re, —; —, -minī, —] to the *Present* stem. (be carried!) Only [fer-re] and [da-re] are found in passive forms.
14. [**fer-rī**] Present passive infinitives (verbal nouns) are formed by adding [**-rī**] to the *Present* stem. (to be carried) Only [fer-re] and [da-re] are found in passive forms.
15. [**fer-ē-bā-mur**] Imperfect passive indicative verbs are formed by adding the suffix [**-bā-**] to the *Present* stem using the *Present* passive endings. (we were being carried) Only [fer-re] and [da-re] are found in passive forms. [fer-re] has an epenthetic [-ē-]; [da-re] does not.

¹⁷⁵ [fer-re] has an epenthetic [-ē-] between the stem and the gerund morpheme [**-nd-**]. [ī-re] has an epenthetic [-u-] and uses a weakened form of its stem [e-]. [da-re] is connected directly to the gerund morpheme [**-nd-**].

¹⁷⁶ [nol-le] shows the addition of an epenthetic [-ī-] between the stem and the ending. [ī-re] shows the addition of an epenthetic [-u-] between the stem and the ending in the 3rd plural only. [es-se] also shows the addition of an epenthetic [-u-] following the shortened stem [s-] in the 3rd plural only.

¹⁷⁷ [fer-re] has an epenthetic [-i-] in the 1st person plural form and an epenthetic [-u-] in the 3rd person plural. [da-re] is connected directly to the *Present* passive endings. [ī-re] is found only in the 3rd person singular form [ī-tur].

16. [**fer-rē-mur**] Imperfect passive subjunctive verbs are formed by adding the suffix [**-rē-**] to the *Present* stem using the *Present* passive endings [-r , -ris (-re) , -tur ; -mur , -minī , -ntur].
17. [**fer-ē-mur**] Future passive indicative verbs (we will be carried)
 - a. [da-re] add the *Future* suffix [**-bo/i/u-**] to the *Present* stem using the *Present Passive* endings.
 - b. [fer-re] add the *Future* suffix [-a- , -ē- , -ē- ; -ē- , -ē- , -ē-] to the *Present* stem using the *Present Passive* endings.
 - c. [ī-re] is found only in the 3rd person singular form [ī-bi-tur].
18. [**fer-tor**] Future passive imperative verbs are formed by adding the *Future Passive Imperative* endings [— , -tor , -tor ; — , -minī , -ntor] to the *Present* stem. (go on and be loved!) Only [fer-re] and [da-re] are found in passive forms.
19. [**fer-e-nd-us**] Gerundives (passive verbal adjectives) are formed by adding the suffix [**-nd-**]¹⁷⁸ and 1st/2nd declension case endings to the *Present* stem. (needing to be carried ; about to be carried)¹⁷⁹
20. [**fer-e-nd-ī su-mus**] Passive Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by the pairing of the gerundive with a form of [*esse*]. (we are needing to be carried ≈ we need to be carried, we must be carried.)

3rd PRINCIPAL PART - **tulī** (1st person, singular, *perfect*, active, indicative): [*Perfect* stem: **tul-**]

All verbal forms of the *Perfect Active System* are formed from the 3rd principal part. Only [fer-re] and [da-re] are found in passive forms, and are formed in the same manner as *Thematic* verbs.

4th PRINCIPAL PART - **lātum** (the *supine* - accusative, singular, neuter): [supine stem: **lā-t-**]

All verbal forms of the *Perfect Passive System* are formed from the 4th principal part, and the large majority are *Periphrastic*. Only [fer-re] and [da-re] are found in passive forms, and are formed in the same manner as *Thematic* verbs.

¹⁷⁸ Note that the suffix [**-nd-**] shortens any vowel coming before it.

¹⁷⁹ The Gerundive is sometimes termed a *Future* passive participle; however, the gerundive typically has a modal force (like the *Subjunctive* mood) expressing what should be done rather than what is actually being done, as in the case of ordinary participles.

SECTION V: MORPHOLOGICAL PARADIGMS

5.1 NOUN PARADIGMS

1st DECLENSION NOMINAL

1st Declension Noun: *serv*-a, -ae (F)¹⁸⁰

	Singular	Plural
Nom	<i>serv</i> -a	<i>serv</i> -ae
Gen	<i>serv</i> -ae	<i>serv</i> -ārum
Dat	<i>serv</i> -ae	<i>serv</i> -īs
Acc	<i>serv</i> -am	<i>serv</i> -ās
Abl	<i>serv</i> -ā	<i>serv</i> -īs
V	<i>serv</i> -a	<i>serv</i> -ae

2nd DECLENSION NOMINAL

2nd Declension Noun: *serv*-us, -ī (M)¹⁸¹

	Singular	Plural
Nom	<i>serv</i> -us	<i>serv</i> -ī
Gen	<i>serv</i> -ī	<i>serv</i> -ōrum
Dat	<i>serv</i> -ō	<i>serv</i> -īs
Acc	<i>serv</i> -um	<i>serv</i> -ōs
Abl	<i>serv</i> -ō	<i>serv</i> -īs
V	<i>serv</i> -e	<i>serv</i> -ī

2nd Declension Noun: *lūli*-us, -ī (M)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	<i>lūli</i> -us	<i>lūli</i> -ī
Gen	<i>lūli</i> -ī	<i>lūli</i> -ōrum
Dat	<i>lūli</i> -ō	<i>lūli</i> -īs
Acc	<i>lūli</i> -um	<i>lūli</i> -ōs
Abl	<i>lūli</i> -ō	<i>lūli</i> -īs
V	<i>lūl</i> -ī	<i>lūli</i> -ī

2nd Declension Noun: *puer*, -ī (M)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	<i>puer</i>	<i>puer</i> -ī
Gen	<i>puer</i> -ī	<i>puer</i> -ōrum
Dat	<i>puer</i> -ō	<i>puer</i> -īs
Acc	<i>puer</i> -um	<i>puer</i> -ōs
Abl	<i>puer</i> -ō	<i>puer</i> -īs
V	<i>puer</i>	<i>puer</i> -ī

2nd Declension Noun: *ager*, -ī (M)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	<i>ager</i>	<i>agr</i> -ī
Gen	<i>agr</i> -ī	<i>agr</i> -ōrum
Dat	<i>agr</i> -ō	<i>agr</i> -īs
Acc	<i>agr</i> -um	<i>agr</i> -ōs
Abl	<i>agr</i> -ō	<i>agr</i> -īs
V	<i>ager</i>	<i>agr</i> -ī

2nd Declension Noun: *vīn*-um, -ī (N)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	<i>vīn</i> -um	<i>vīn</i> -a
Gen	<i>vīn</i> -ī	<i>vīn</i> -ōrum
Dat	<i>vīn</i> -ō	<i>vīn</i> -īs
Acc	<i>vīn</i> -um	<i>vīn</i> -a
Abl	<i>vīn</i> -ō	<i>vīn</i> -īs
V	<i>vīn</i> -um	<i>vīn</i> -a

3rd DECLENSION NOMINAL (consonant-stem)

3rd Declension Labials: *prīncep*-s, *prīncip*-is (M)¹⁸²

	Singular	Plural
Nom	<i>prīncep</i> -s	<i>prīncip</i> -ēs
Gen	<i>prīncip</i> -is	<i>prīncip</i> -um
Dat	<i>prīncip</i> -ī	<i>prīncip</i> -ibus
Acc	<i>prīncip</i> -em	<i>prīncip</i> -ēs
Abl	<i>prīncip</i> -e	<i>prīncip</i> -ibus
V	<i>prīncep</i> -s	<i>prīncip</i> -ēs

3rd Declension Dental: *mīle*-s, *mīlit*-is (M)¹⁸³

	Singular	Plural
Nom	<i>mīle</i> -s	<i>mīlit</i> -ēs
Gen	<i>mīlit</i> -is	<i>mīlit</i> -um
Dat	<i>mīlit</i> -ī	<i>mīlit</i> -ibus
Acc	<i>mīlit</i> -em	<i>mīlit</i> -ēs
Ab	<i>mīlit</i> -e	<i>mīlit</i> -ibus
V	<i>mīle</i> -s	<i>mīlit</i> -ēs

¹⁸⁰ An archaic *Genitive* singular form is preserved in term like [*pater-famili-as*] (father of the family). An archaic *Dative/Ablative* plural form is preserved in a few words: e.g. *fīli-ābus*, *de-ābus*, *gnat-ābus*.

¹⁸¹ Only the 2nd declension forms with nominatives in [-us] and [-i-us] have *Vocative* singulars that differ from the *Nominative*.

¹⁸² 3rd Declension stems that end in Labials [b, p] combine with the M/F *Nominative* singular [-s] without alteration. Short final vowels, like the [e] of the *Nominative* and *Vocative* singular of [*prīncep*-], often undergoes vowel weakening in the other cases, as seen here to [i].

¹⁸³ 3rd Declension stems that end in Dentals [d, t] combine with the M/F *Nominative* singular [-s] by eliminating the final

3rd Declension Velar: **rēc-s, rēg-is** (M)¹⁸⁴

	Singular	Plural
Nom	rēx (rēc-s)	rēg-ēs
Gen	rēg-is	rēg-um
Dat	rēg-ī	rēg-ibus
Acc	rēg-em	rēg-ēs
Abl	rēg-e	rēg-ibus
V	rēc-s	rēg-ēs

3rd Declension Liquid: **amor, amōr-is** (M)¹⁸⁵

	Singular	Plural
Nom	amor (amor-s)	amōr-ēs
Gen	amōr-is	amōr-um
Dat	amōr-ī	amōr-ibus
Acc	amōr-em	amōr-ēs
Abl	amōr-e	amōr-ibus
V	amor	amōr-ēs

3rd Declension Nasal: **homō, homin-is** (M)¹⁸⁶

	Singular	Plural
Nom	homō (homin-s)	homin-ēs
Gen	homin-is	homin-um
Dat	homin-ī	homin-ibus
Acc	homin-em	homin-ēs
Abl	homin-e	homin-ibus
V	homō	homin-ēs

3rd Declension Sibilant: **cinis, ciner-is** (M)¹⁸⁷

	Singular	Plural
Nom	cinis (cinis-s)	ciner-ēs
Gen	ciner-is	ciner-um
Dat	ciner-ī	ciner-ibus
Acc	ciner-em	ciner-ēs
Abl	ciner-e	ciner-ibus
V	cinis	ciner-ēs

3rd Declension Sibilant: **corpus, corpor-is** (N)¹⁸⁸

	Singular	Plural
Nom	corpus	corpor-a
Gen	corpor-is	corpor-um
Dat	corpor-ī	corpor-ibus
Acc	corpus	corpor-a
Abl	corpor-e	corpor-ibus
V	corpus	corpor-a

3rd DECLENSION NOMINAL (i-stem)

3rd Declension Noun: **ov-is, ov-is** (F)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	ov-is	ov-ēs
Gen	ov-is	ov-ium
Dat	ov-ī	ov-ibus
Acc	ov-em	ov-ēs
Abl	ov-e	ov-ibus
V	ov-is	ov-ēs

3rd Declension Noun: **mon-s, mont-is** (M)¹⁸⁹

	Singular	Plural
Nom	mon-s	mont-ēs
Gen	mont-is	mont-ium
Dat	mont-ī	mont-ibus
Acc	mont-em	mont-ēs
Abl	mont-e	mont-ibus
V	mon-s	mont-ēs

3rd Declension Noun: **mar-e, mar-is** (N)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	mar-e	mar-ia
Gen	mar-is	mar-ium
Dat	mar-ī	mar-ibus
Acc	mar-e	mar-ia
Abl	mar-ī	mar-ibus
V	mar-e	mar-ia

dental of the stem. Short final vowels, like the [e] of the *Nominative* and *Vocative* singular of [milet-], often undergoes vowel weakening in the other cases, as seen here to [i].

¹⁸⁴ 3rd Declension stems that end in Velars [c, g] combine with the M/F *Nominative* singular [-s] by being written as [x]. [rēg-] is devoiced to [c] when followed by [s]; [cs] is written as [x].

¹⁸⁵ 3rd Declension M/F stems ending in a Liquid [l, r] lose the [-s] of the *Nominative* singular.

¹⁸⁶ M/F stems ending in [n] lose the [-s] of the *Nominative* singular along with their final [n]. Only one stem ends in [m]: hiems, hiemis F.

¹⁸⁷ The *Nominative* singular form [cinis-s] is simplified to [cinis]. The final [s] of the stem [cinis-] becomes an [r] when followed by a vowel. This effect is termed rhotacism. Short final vowels, like the [i] of the *Nominative* and *Vocative* singular of [cinis-], often become [e] before the [r].

¹⁸⁸ The final [s] of the stem [corpus-] becomes an [r] when followed by a vowel. This effect is termed rhotacism.

¹⁸⁹ The final [t] of the stem [mont-] is lost when followed by an [s]; the same process is seen in the *Present* active participle: amā-n-s, ama-nt-is

4th DECLENSION NOMINAL

4th Declension: **man-us**, **man-ūs** (F)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	man-us	man-ūs
Gen	man-ūs	man-uum
Dat	man-uī	man-ibus
Acc	man-um	man-ūs
Abl	man-ū	man-ibus
V	man-us	man-ūs

4th Declension: **corn-ū**, **corn-ūs** (N)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	corn-ū	corn-ūa
Gen	corn-ūs	corn-uum
Dat	corn-ū	corn-ibus
Acc	corn-ū	corn-ūa
Abl	corn-ū	corn-ibus
V	corn-ū	corn-ūa

4th/2nd Declension: **dom-us**, **dom-ūs** (F)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	dom-us	dom-ūs
Gen	dom-ūs (dom-ī)	dom-ōrum
Dat	dom-uī (dom-ō)	dom-ibus
Acc	dom-um	dom-ōs (dom-ūs)
Abl	dom-ō	dom-ibus
V	dom-us	dom-ūs

5th DECLENSION NOMINAL

5th Declension: **r-ēs**, **r-eī** (F)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	r-ēs	r-ēs
Gen	r-eī	r-ērum
Dat	r-eī	r-ēbus
Acc	r-em	r-ēs
Abl	r-ē	r-ēbus
V	r-ēs	r-ēs

5th Declension: **di-es**, **di-eī** (M)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	di-ēs	di-ēs
Gen	di-eī	di-ērum
Dat	di-eī	di-ēbus
Acc	di-em	di-ēs
Abl	di-ē	di-ēbus
V	di-ēs	di-ēs

GREEK NOMINAL DECLENSIONS

1st Declension Greek: **Aenē-ās**, -ae (M)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	Aenē-ās	—
Gen	Aenē-ae	—
Dat	Aenē-ae	—
Acc	Aenē-ān	—
Abl	Aenē-ā	—
V	Aenē-ā	—

2nd Declension Greek: **Dēl-os**, -ī (F)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	Dēl-os	—
Gen	Dēl-ī	—
Dat	Dēl-ō	—
Acc	Dēl-on (Dēl-um)	—
Abl	Dēl-ō	—
V	Dēl-e	—

3rd Declension Greek: **crātēr**, **crātēr-is** (M)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	crātēr (crātēr-s)	crātēr-es
Gen	crātēr-os (crātēr-is)	crātēr-um
Dat	crātēr-ī	crātēr-ibus
Acc	crātēr-a	crātēr-as
Abl	crātēr-e	crātēr-ibus
V	crātēr	crātēr-es

3rd Declension Greek: **hero-s**, **hērō-is** (M)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	hero-s	hērō-es
Gen	hērō-is	hērō-um
Dat	hērō-ī	hērō-ibus
Acc	hērō-a (hērō-em)	hērō-as
Abl	hērō-e	hērō-ibus
V	hero-s	hērō-es

2nd/3rd Declension Greek: **Sōcrat-ēs**, -is (M)

	Singular	Plural
Nom	Sōcrat-ēs	Sōcrat-ae
Gen	Sōcrat-is (Sōcrat-ī)	—
Dat	Sōcrat-ī	—
Acc	Sōcrat-ēn (Sōcrat-em)	—
Abl	Sōcrat-ā	—
V	Sōcrat-es (Sōcrat-ē)	—

5.2 ADJECTIVE PARADIGMS

1st/2nd DECLENSION ADJECTIVAL

1st/2nd Declension: **bon-us**, **bon-a**, **bon-um** ; **asper**, **asper-a**, **asper-um**

	M	F	N	M	F	N
Nom	bon-us	bon-a	bon-um	asper	asper-a	asper-um
Gen	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-ī	asper-ī	asper-ae	asper-ī
Dat	bon-ō	bon-ae	bon-ō	asper-ō	asper-ae	asper-ō
Acc	bon-um	bon-am	bon-um	asper-um	asper-am	asper-um
Abl	bon-ō	bon-ā	bon-ō	asper-ō	asper-a	asper-ō
Voc	bon-e	bon-a	bon-um	asper	asper-a	asper-um
Nom	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a	asper-ī	asper-ae	asper-a
Gen	bon-ōrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum	asper-ōrum	asper-ārum	asper-ōrum
Dat	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs	asper-īs	asper-īs	asper-īs
Acc	bon-ōs	bon-ās	bon-a	asper-ōs	asper-ās	asper-a
Abl	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs	asper-īs	asper-īs	asper-īs
Voc	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a	asper-ī	asper-ae	asper-a

1st/2nd Declension: **piger**, **pigr-a**, **pigr-um** ; (Genitive in -īus) **alter**, **alter-a**, **alter-um**

	M	F	N	M	F	N
Nom	piger	pigr-a	pigr-um	alter	bon-a	bon-um
Gen	pigr-ī	pigr-ae	pigr-ī	alter-īus	alter-īus	alter-īus
Dat	pigr-ō	pigr-ae	pigr-ō	alter-ī	alter-ī	alter-ī
Acc	pigr-um	pigr-am	pigr-um	alter-um	alter-am	alter-um
Abl	pigr-ō	pigr-a	pigr-ō	alter-ō	alter-ā	alter-ō
Voc	piger	pigr-a	pigr-um	alter	alter-a	alter-um
Nom	pigr-ī	pigr-ae	pigr-a	alter-ī	alter-ae	alter-a
Gen	pigr-ōrum	pigr-ārum	pigr-ōrum	alter-ōrum	alter-ārum	alter-ōrum
Dat	pigr-īs	pigr-īs	pigr-īs	alter-īs	alter-īs	alter-īs
Acc	pigr-ōs	pigr-ās	pigr-a	alter-ōs	alter-ās	alter-a
Abl	pigr-īs	pigr-īs	pigr-īs	alter-īs	alter-īs	alter-īs
Voc	pigr-ī	pigr-ae	pigr-a	alter-ī	alter-ae	alter-a

3rd Declension i-stem: (2 endings) **facil-is**, **facil-e** ; (3 endings) **alacer**, **alacr-is**, **alacr-e**

	M/F	N	M	F	N
Nom	facil-is	facil-e	alacer	alacr-is	alacr-e
Gen	facil-is	facil-is	alacr-is	alacr-is	alacr-is
Dat	facil-ī	facil-ī	alacr-ī	alacr-ī	alacr-ī
Acc	facil-em	facil-e	alacr-em	alacr-em	alacr-e
Abl	facil-ī	facil-ī	alacr-ī	alacr-ī	alacr-ī
Voc	facil-is	facil-e	alacer	alacr-is	alacr-e
Nom	facil-ēs	facil-ia	alacr-ēs	alacr-ēs	alacr-ia
Gen	facil-ium	facil-ium	alacr-ium	alacr-ium	alacr-ium
Dat	facil-ibus	facil-ibus	alacr-ibus	alacr-ibus	alacr-ibus
Acc	facil-ēs (-īs)	facil-ia	alacr-ēs (-īs)	alacr-ēs (-īs)	alacr-ia
Abl	facil-ibus	facil-ibus	alacr-ibus	alacr-ibus	alacr-ibus
Voc	facil-ēs	facil-ia	alacr-ēs	alacr-ēs	alacr-ia

3rd Declension i-stem: (1 ending) **fēlīx** ; (i-stem) **ingēn-s**

	M/F	N	M/F	N
Nom	fēlīx (fēlīc-s)	fēlīx	ingēn-s	ingēn-s
Gen	fēlīc-is	fēlīc-is	ingent-is	ingent-is
Dat	fēlīc-ī	fēlīc-ī	ingent-ī	ingent-ī
Acc	fēlīc-em	fēlīx	ingent-em	ingēn-s
Abl	fēlīc-ī	fēlīc-ī	ingent-ī	ingent-ī
Voc	fēlīx	fēlīx	ingēn-s	ingēn-s
Nom	fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ia	ingent-ēs	ingent-ia
Gen	fēlīc-ium	fēlīc-ium	ingent-ium	ingent-ium
Dat	fēlīc-ibus	fēlīc-ibus	ingent-ibus	ingent-ibus
Acc	fēlīc-ēs (-īs)	fēlīc-ia	ingent-ēs (-īs)	ingent-ia
Abl	fēlīc-ibus	fēlīc-ibus	ingent-ibus	ingent-ibus
Voc	fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ia	ingent-ēs	ingent-ia

3rd Declension consonant-stem: (*Dental*) **dīvēs** ; (*Sibilant*) **vetus** ; (*Labial*) **caeleb-s**

	M/F	N	M/F	N	M/F	N
Nom	dīvē-s (dīvit-s)	dīvēs ¹⁹⁰	vetus	vetus	caeleb-s	caeleb-s
Gen	dīvit-is	dīvit-is	veter-is	veter-is	caelib-is	caelib-is
Dat	dīvit-ī	dīvit-ī	veter-ī	veter-ī	caelib-ī	caelib-ī
Acc	dīvit-em	dīvēs	veter-em	vetus	caelib-em	caeleb-s
Abl	dīvit-e	dīvit-e	veter-e	veter-e	caelib-e	caelib-e
Voc	dīvē-s	dīvēs	vetus	vetus	caeleb-s	caeleb-s
Nom	dīvit-ēs	dīvit-ia	veter-ēs	veter-a	caelib-ēs	caelib-a
Gen	dīvit-um	dīvit-um	veter-um	veter-um	caelib-um	caelib-um
Dat	dīvit-ibus	dīvit-ibus	veter-ibus	veter-ibus	caelib-ibus	caelib-ibus
Acc	dīvit-ēs	dīvit-ia	veter-ēs	veter-a	caelib-ēs	caelib-a
Abl	dīvit-ibus	dīvit-ibus	veter-ibus	veter-ibus	caelib-ibus	caelib-ibus
Voc	dīvit-ēs	dīvit-ia	veter-ēs	veter-a	caelib-ēs	caelib-a

3rd Decl. Comparative: **dūr-ior**, **dūr-ius** ; 1st/2nd Decl. Superlative: **dūr-issim-us**, **dūr-issim-a**, **dūr-issim-um**

	M/F	N	M	F	N
Nom	dūr-ior	dūr-ius	dūr-issim-us	dūr-issim-a	dūr-issim-um
Gen	dūr-iōr-is	dūr-iōr-is	dūr-issim-ī	dūr-issim-ae	dūr-issim-ī
Dat	dūr-iōr-ī	dūr-iōr-ī	dūr-issim-ō	dūr-issim-ae	dūr-issim-ō
Acc	dūr-iōr-em	dūr-ius	dūr-issim-um	dūr-issim-am	dūr-issim-um
Abl	dūr-iōr-e	dūr-iōr-e	dūr-issim-ō	dūr-issim-a	dūr-issim-ō
Voc	dūr-ior	dūr-ius	dūr-issim-e	dūr-issim-a	dūr-issim-um
Nom	dūr-iōr-ēs	dūr-iōr-a	dūr-issim-ī	dūr-issim-ae	dūr-issim-a
Gen	dūr-iōr-um	dūr-iōr-um	dūr-issim-ōrum	dūr-issim-ārum	dūr-issim-ōrum
Dat	dūr-iōr-ibus	dūr-iōr-ibus	dūr-issim-īs	dūr-issim-īs	dūr-issim-īs
Acc	dūr-iōr-ēs	dūr-iōr-a	dūr-issim-ōs	dūr-issim-ās	dūr-issim-a
Abl	dūr-iōr-ibus	dūr-iōr-ibus	dūr-issim-īs	dūr-issim-īs	dūr-issim-īs
Voc	dūr-iōr-ēs	dūr-iōr-a	dūr-issim-ī	dūr-issim-ae	dūr-issim-a

¹⁹⁰ The neuter *Nominative/Accusative* singular and the *Vocative* singular are formed by analogy with the M/F *Nominative* singular.

5.3 ADVERB FORMATION

All true adverbs are derived from adjectives as discussed below.¹⁹¹ Adverbs were not in common use for all adjectives in all possible degrees, and alternate forms were in use for a few adverbs.

A. Positive Degree Adverbs (X-ish-ly):

1. 1st/2nd Declension Adjectives: The stem vowel + ending are replaced by [-ē]: e.g. **lent**-us > **lent**-ē.
2. 3rd Declension Adjectives: The ending is replaced by [-ter]: e.g. **grav**-i-s > **grav**-i-ter.
 - a. Forms ending in [-ns, -nt-]: e.g. **dīlīgen**-s > **dīlīgen**-ter.
 - b. Other stems that lack the characteristic [i] in the *Nominative* singular: e.g. **fēlic**-s > **fēlic**-i-ter.

B. Comparative Degree Adverbs (more/rather/too X-ish-ly):

Are all formed by replacing the stem vowel and ending with the ending [-ius]: e.g. **lent**-us > **lent**-ius; **grav**-is > **grav**-ius. The comparative adverb is an *Adverbial Accusative* usage of the *Accusative* singular neuter of the comparative adjective.

C. Superlative Degree Adverbs (most/very X-ish-ly):

Are all formed by replacing the stem vowel and ending of the superlative adjective with the ending [-ē]: e.g. **lent**-us > **lent**-issim-us > **lent**-issim-ē; **grav**-is > **grav**-issim-us > **grav**-issim-ē.

- a. Adjectival forms ending in [-er]: e.g. (Positive) **celer** > (Superlative) **celer**-rim-us > **celer**-rim-ē
- b. Six adjectival forms ending in [-lis] i.e. [facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis]: e.g. (Positive) **facil**-is > (Superlative) **facil**-lim-us > **facil**-lim-ē.

D. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs:

A few adjectival/adverbial forms have comparative and superlative forms derived from different stems or that are not superficially regular:

Adjectives			Adverbs		
<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>	<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus	melior	optimus	bene ¹⁹²	melius	optimē
malus	peior	pessimus	male	peius	pessimē
māgnus	maior	maximus	(multum)	(magis)	maximē
multus	(plūs)	plūrrimus	(multum)	plūs	(plūrrimum)
parvus	minor	minimus	(parum)	minus	minimē
(nēquam)	nēquior	nēquissimus	nēquiter	nēquius	nēquissimē
(frūgī)	frūgālior	frūgālissimus	frūgāliter	frūgālius	—
dexter	dexterior	dextimus	dextrē	dexterius	—
[potis]	potior	potissimus	—	potius	(potissimum)
			(saepe)	saepius	saepissimē
			(diū)	diūtius	diūtissimē
			(nūper)	—	nūperrimē
			(satis)	satius	—

¹⁹¹ There are many forms commonly referred to as adverbs that are simply common instances of particular case usages. The *Accusative* of some forms was commonly used as an *Adverbial Accusative* (e.g. multum, facile), while the *Ablative* was commonly used as an *Ablative of the Degree of Difference* (e.g. multō), the *Ablative of Location* (e.g. intrā), or the *Ablative of the Cause* (e.g. forte). Some forms were phrases: magnoperē < magnō opere, an *Ablative of Manner*. Other forms were *Locative* (e.g. hīc, illīc), or even *Accusative of Extent* (e.g. forās). All of these forms are adverbial usages of the cases, but not morphological adverbs *per se*.

¹⁹² [bonē > benē > bene] through *Vowel Weakening* and *Iambic Shortening*; [malē > male] through *Iambic Shortening*

5.4 PRONOUN PARADIGMS

Personal Pronouns: **ego**, **tu**, **sē**

	1 st	2 nd	3 rd (reflexive)
Nom	ego	t-u	—
Gen	m-eī	t-uī	s-uī
Dat	m-ihi (m-ī)	t-ibi	s-ibi
Acc	m-ē	t-ē	s-ē (sēsē)
Abl	m-ē	t-ē	s-ē

Nom	n-ōs	v-ōs	—
Gen	nōstr-ī	vestr-ī	s-uī
Dat	nōb-īs	vōb-īs	s-ibi
Acc	n-ōs	v-ōs	s-ē (sēsē)
Abl	nōb-īs	vōb-īs	s-ē

3rd Personal/Demonstrative Pronoun: **i-s**, **e-a**, **id**

M	F	N
i-s	e-a	id
e-ius	e-ius	e-ius
e-ī	e-ī	e-ī
e-um	e-am	id
e-ō	e-ā	e-ō
i-ī (e-ī , ī)	e-ae	e-a
e-ōrum	e-ārum	e-ōrum
e-īs (i-īs)	e-īs (i-īs)	e-īs (i-īs)
e-ōs	e-ās	e-a
e-īs (i-īs)	e-īs (i-īs)	e-īs (i-īs)

Demonstrative Pronoun: **hi-c**, **hae-c**, **ho-c**¹⁹³;

	M	F	N
Nom	h-i-c	hae-c	h-o-c
Gen	hu-ius	hu-ius	hu-ius
Dat	hu-i-c	hu-i-c	hu-i-c
Acc	h-un-c	h-an-c	h-o-c
Abl	h-ō-c	h-ā-c	h-ō-c

Nom	h-ī	hae	hae-c
Gen	h-ōrum	h-ārum	h-ōrum
Dat	h-īs	h-īs	h-īs
Acc	h-ōs	h-ās	hae-c
Abl	h-īs	h-īs	h-īs

Demonstrative Pronoun: **ill-e**, **ill-a**, **ill-um**

M	F	N
ill-e	ill-a	ill-ud
ill-īus	ill-īus	ill-īus
ill-ī	ill-ī	ill-ī
ill-um	ill-am	ill-ud
ill-ō	ill-ā	ill-ō

ill-ī	ill-ae	ill-a
ill-ōrum	ill-ārum	ill-ōrum
ill-īs	ill-īs	ill-īs
ill-ōs	ill-ās	ill-a
ill-īs	ill-īs	ill-īs

Intensive Pronoun: **ips-e**, **ips-a**, **ips-um** ;

	M	F	N
Nom	ips-e	ips-a	ips-um
Gen	ips-īus	ips-īus	ips-īus
Dat	ips-ī	ips-ī	ips-ī
Acc	ips-um	ips-am	ips-um
Abl	ips-ō	ips-ā	ips-ō

Nom	ips-ī	ips-ae	ips-a
Gen	ips-ōrum	ips-ārum	ips-ōrum
Dat	ips-īs	ips-īs	ips-īs
Acc	ips-ōs	ips-ās	ips-a
Abl	ips-īs	ips-īs	ips-īs

Definitive Pronoun: **ī-dem**, **e-a-dem**, **i-dem**¹⁹⁴

M	F	N
ī-dem	e-a-dem	i-dem
e-ius-dem	e-ius-dem	e-ius-dem
e-ī-dem	e-ī-dem	e-ī-dem
e-un-dem	e-an-dem	i-dem
e-ō-dem	e-ā-dem	e-ō-dem

i-ī-dem	e-ae-dem	e-a-dem
e-ōrun-dem	e-ārun-dem	e-ōrun-dem
īs-dem	īs-dem	īs-dem
e-ōs-dem	e-ās-dem	e-a-dem
īs-dem	īs-dem	īs-dem

¹⁹³ The deictic enclitic particle [-c] indicates here-and-now-ness. When it follows an [m], the [-c] causes regressive partial assimilation: i.e. [h-um-c] becomes [h-un-c].

¹⁹⁴ *Nominative* plural masculine also has (**e-ī-dem**); *Dative* and *Ablative* plural in all genders also has (**e-īs-dem**). When it follows an [m], the intensive suffix [-dem] causes regressive partial assimilation: i.e. [e-ōrum-dem] becomes [e-ōrun-dem].

Relative Pronoun/Interrog. Adjective: **qu-ī, qu-ae, qu-od**

	M	F	N
Nom	qu-ī	qu-ae	qu-od
Gen	cu-ius	cu-ius	cu-ius
Dat	cu-i	cu-i	cu-i
Acc	qu-em	qu-am	qu-od
Abl	qu-ō	qu-ā	qu-ō

Nom	qu-ī	qu-ae	qu-ae
Gen	qu-ōrum	qu-ārum	qu-ōrum
Dat	qu-ibus	qu-ibus	qu-ibus
Acc	qu-ōs	qu-ās	qu-ae
Abl	qu-ibus	qu-ibus	qu-ibus

Interrogative Pronoun: **qu-is, qu-is, qu-id**¹⁹⁵

M	F	N
qu-is	qu-is	qu-id
cu-ius	cu-ius	cu-ius
cu-i	cu-i	cu-i
qu-em	qu-am	qu-id
qu-ō	qu-ā	qu-ō

qu-ī	qu-ae	qu-ae
qu-ōrum	qu-ārum	qu-ōrum
qu-ibus	qu-ibus	qu-ibus
qu-ōs	qu-ās	qu-ae
qu-ibus	qu-ibus	qu-ibus

Indefinite Pronoun: **ali-qu-is, ali-qu-a, ali-qu-id**

M	F	N
ali-qu-is	ali-qu-a	ali-qu-id
ali-cu-ius	ali-cu-ius	ali-cu-ius
ali-cu-i	ali-cu-i	ali-cu-i
ali-qu-em	ali-qu-am	ali-qu-id
ali-qu-ō	ali-qu-ā	ali-qu-ō

ali-qu-ī	ali-qu-ae	ali-qu-a
ali-qu-ōrum	ali-qu-ārum	ali-qu-ōrum
ali-qu-ibus	ali-qu-ibus	ali-qu-ibus
ali-qu-ōs	ali-qu-ās	ali-qu-a
ali-qu-ibus	ali-qu-ibus	ali-qu-ibus

Indefinite Pr. (after *sī* or *nē*): **qu-is, qu-a, qu-id**¹⁹⁶

M	F	N
qu-is	qu-a	qu-id
cu-ius	cu-ius	cu-ius
cu-i	cu-i	cu-i
qu-em	qu-am	qu-id
qu-ō	qu-ā	qu-ō

qu-ī	qu-ae	qu-a (qu-ae)
qu-ōrum	qu-ārum	qu-ōrum
qu-ibus	qu-ibus	qu-ibus
qu-ōs	qu-ās	qu-a (qu-ae)
qu-ibus	qu-ibus	qu-ibus

Universal Pronoun: **qu-is-que, qu-ae-que, qu-id-que** Indefinite Pr.: **qu-ī-dam, qu-ae-dam, qu-id-dam**

M	F	N
qu-is-que	qu-ae-que	qu-id-que
cu-ius-que	cu-ius-que	cu-ius-que
cu-i-que	cu-i-que	cu-i-que
qu-em-que	qu-am-que	qu-id-que
qu-ō-que	qu-ā-que	qu-ō-que

qu-ī-que	qu-ae-que	qu-ae-que
qu-ōrum-que	qu-ārum-que	qu-ōrum-que
qu-ibus-que	qu-ibus-que	qu-ibus-que
qu-ōs-que	qu-ās-que	qu-ae-que
qu-ibus-que	qu-ibus-que	qu-ibus-que

M	F	N
qu-ī-dam	qu-ae-dam	qu-id-dam
cu-ius-dam	cu-ius-dam	cu-ius-dam
cu-i-dam	cu-i-dam	cu-i-dam
qu-em-dam	qu-am-dam	qu-id-dam
qu-ō-dam	qu-ā-dam	qu-ō-dam

qu-ī-dam	qu-ae-dam	qu-ae-dam
qu-ōrum-dam	qu-ārum-dam	qu-ōrum-dam
qu-ibus-dam	qu-ibus-dam	qu-ibus-dam
qu-ōs-dam	qu-ās-dam	qu-ae-dam
qu-ibus-dam	qu-ibus-dam	qu-ibus-dam

¹⁹⁵ The Interrogative pronoun differs from the Relative pronoun only in the *Nominative* singular forms. The Interrogative adjective has the same forms as the Relative pronoun. *Dative* and *Ablative* plural in all genders also has (**qu-īs**).

¹⁹⁶ The Indefinite pronoun differs from the Interrogative pronoun only in the *Nominative* singular feminine [**qu-a**] and in the *Nominative* and *Accusative* plural neuter in [**qu-a**]. The Interrogative/Indefinite pronoun can be compounded with many intensive prefixes and suffixes: -que, -nam, -dam, -cumque, -vīs, -libet, -piam, -quam, ec-, ali-.

5.5 NUMERAL PARADIGMS

Most types of Latin numerals are adjectival, with Cardinal and Ordinal numbers being the most common. The numeral adverbs were also in common use, especially for the smaller numbers.

- A. **Cardinal Numbers:** These 1st/2nd Declension adjectives indicate the absolute number of the noun that they modify: e.g. quīnque pueri Romam eunt. (Five boys are going to Roma). Only the numbers 1, 2, 3, and multiples of 100 decline.
- B. **Ordinal Numbers:** These 1st/2nd Declension adjectives indicate the place in sequence of the noun that they modify: e.g. quīntus puer Romam it. (The fifth boy is going to Roma).
- C. **Distributive Numbers:** These 1st/2nd Declension adjectives indicate how many at a time of the noun that they modify: e.g. quīntēnī puerī Roman eunt. (The boys are going to Roma five at a time).
- D. **Multiplicative Numbers:** These 3rd Declension adjectives indicate the complexity or magnitude of the noun that they modify (how many times folded or multiplied): e.g. consul mīlitēs dūplicī aciē ēdūxit. (The consul led out the soldiers in a double battle-line). The suffix [-plex] is derived from the verb [plicāre : to fold] and also occurs in forms like [multi-plex] and [sup-plex]. Although regularly derived, only certain multiplicatives are preserved in ancient texts: simplex (single/simple), duplex (2X), triplex (3X), quadruplex (4X), quīnquplex (5X), septemplex (7X), decemplex (10X), sēsquīplex (1.5X), centumplex (100X). The Latin multiplicatives perform the function of proportional numbers as well.
- E. **Numeral Adverbs:** These adverbs modify a verbal form to indicate how many times something occurs: e.g. puer ōrātiōnem quīnquiēns leget. (The boy will read the oration five times).

1st/2nd Declension (-īus *genitive*): ūn-us, ūn-a, ūn-um

	M	F	N
Nom	<u>ūn</u> -us	<u>ūn</u> -a	<u>ūn</u> -um
Gen	<u>ūn</u> -īus	<u>ūn</u> -īus	<u>ūn</u> -īus
Dat	<u>ūn</u> -ī	<u>ūn</u> -ī	<u>ūn</u> -ī
Acc	<u>ūn</u> -um	<u>ūn</u> -am	<u>ūn</u> -um
Abl	<u>ūn</u> -ō	<u>ūn</u> -ā	<u>ūn</u> -ō
Voc	<u>ūn</u> -e	<u>ūn</u> -a	<u>ūn</u> -um

Nom	<u>ūn</u> -ī	<u>ūn</u> -ae	<u>ūn</u> -a
Gen	<u>ūn</u> -ōrum	<u>ūn</u> -ārum	<u>ūn</u> -ōrum
Dat	<u>ūn</u> -īs	<u>ūn</u> -īs	<u>ūn</u> -īs
Acc	<u>ūn</u> -ōs	<u>ūn</u> -ās	<u>ūn</u> -a
Abl	<u>ūn</u> -īs	<u>ūn</u> -īs	<u>ūn</u> -īs
Voc	<u>ūn</u> -ī	<u>ūn</u> -ae	<u>ūn</u> -a

1st/2nd Declension: du-o, du-ae, du-o¹⁹⁷ ; 3rd Declension (i-stem): tr-ēs, tr-ia

	M	F	N	M/F	N
Nom	<u>du</u> -o	<u>du</u> -ae	<u>du</u> -o	<u>tr</u> -ēs	<u>tr</u> -ia
Gen	<u>du</u> -ōrum	<u>du</u> -ārum	<u>du</u> -ōrum	<u>tr</u> -ium	<u>tr</u> -ium
Dat	<u>du</u> -ōbus	<u>du</u> -ābus	<u>du</u> -ōbus	<u>tr</u> -ibus	<u>tr</u> -ibus
Acc	<u>du</u> -ōs (<u>du</u> -o)	<u>du</u> -ās	<u>du</u> -o	<u>tr</u> -ēs	<u>tr</u> -ia
Abl	<u>du</u> -ōbus	<u>du</u> -ābus	<u>du</u> -ōbus	<u>tr</u> -ibus	<u>tr</u> -ibus
Voc	<u>du</u> -o	<u>du</u> -ae	<u>du</u> -o	<u>tr</u> -ēs	<u>tr</u> -ia

¹⁹⁷ Like [ambō], [duo] is a dual, which explains the unusual form of the *Nominative* and *Accusative*: cf. the *Nom/Acc/Voc* dual of the 2nd Declension in Greek – e.g. ἀνθρώπων.

Synopsis of Numeral Forms:

	Cardinal	Ordinal	Distributive	Numeral Adverb
I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a	semel
II	duo, -ae, -o	secundus, -a, -um	bīnī, -ae, -a	bis
III	trēs, -ia	tertius, -a, -um	ternī, -ae, -a	ter
IV	quattuor	quārtus, -a, -um	quaternī, -ae, -a	quater
V	quīnque	quīntus, -a, -um	quīnī, -ae, -a	quīnquiēns
VI	sex	sextus, -a, -um	sēnī, -ae, -a	sexiēns
VII	septem	septimus, -a, -um	septēnī, -ae, -a	septiēns
VIII	octō	octāvus, -a, -um	octōnī, -ae, -a	octiēns
IX	novem	nōnus, -a, -um	novēnī, -ae, -a	noviēns
X	decem	decimus, -a, -um	dēnī, -ae, -a	deciēns
XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus, -a, -um	ūndēnī, -ae, -a	ūndeciēns
XII	duodecim	duodecimus, -a, -um	duodēnī, -ae, -a	duodeciēns
XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus, -a, -um	ternī dēnī, -ae, -a	terdeciēns
XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus, -a, -um	quaternī dēnī, -ae, -a	quattuordeciēns
XV	quīndecim	quīntus decimus, -a, -um	quīnī dēnī, -ae, -a	quīndeciēns
XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus, -a, -um	sēnī dēnī, -ae, -a	sēdeciēns
XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus, -a, -um	septēnī dēnī, -ae, -a	septiēns deciēns
XVIII	duodēvīgentī	duodēvīcēnsimus, -a, -um	duodēvīcēnī, -ae, -a	duodēvīciēns
XIX	ūndēvīgentī	ūndēvīcēnsimus, -a, -um	ūndēvīcēnī, -ae, -a	ūndēvīciēns
XX	vīgentī	vīcēnsimus, -a, -um	vīcēnī, -ae, -a	vīciēns
XXI	ūnus et vīgentī	ūnus et vīcēnsimus, -a, -um	vīcēnī singulī, -ae, -a	semel et vīciēns ¹⁹⁸
XXX	trīgintā	trīcēnsimus, -a, -um	trīcēnī, -ae, -a	trīciēns
XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēnsimus, -a, -um	quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a	quadrāgiēns
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus, -a, -um	quīnquāgēnī, -ae, -a	quīnquāgiēns
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus, -a, -um	sexāgēnī, -ae, -a	sexāgiēns
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus, -a, -um	septuāgēnī, -ae, -a	septuāgiēns
LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēnsimus, -a, -um	octōgēnī, -ae, -a	octōgiēns
XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus, -a, -um	nōnāgēnī, -ae, -a	nōnāgiēns
C	centum	centēnsimus, -a, -um	centēnī, -ae, -a	centiēns
CI	centum et ūnus	centēnsimus prīmus, -a, -um	centēnī singulī, -ae, -a	centiēns semel
CXXII	centum vīgentī duo	centēnsimus vīcēnsimus secundus	centēnī vīcēnī bīnī	centiēns vīciēns bis
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus, -a, -um	ducēnī, -ae, -a	ducentiēns
CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēnsimus, -a, -um	trecēnī, -ae, -a	trecentiēns
CCCC	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentēnsimus, -a, -um	quadringēnī, -ae, -a	quadringentiēns
IO, D	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēnsimus, -a, -um	quīngēnī, -ae, -a	quīngentiēns
DC	sescentī, -ae, -a	sescentēnsimus, -a, -um	sescēnī, -ae, -a	sescentiēns
DCC	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentēnsimus, -a, -um	septingēnī, -ae, -a	septingentiēns
DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentēnsimus, -a, -um	octingēnī, -ae, -a	octingentiēns
DCCCC	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēnsimus, -a, -um	nōngēnī, -ae, -a	nōngentiēns
CIO	mīlle	mīllēnsimus, -a, -um	singula mīlia	mīliēns ¹⁹⁹
CIOCIO	duo mīlia	bis mīllēnsimus, -a, -um	bīna mīlia	bis mīliēns
CIOO	quīnque mīlia	quīnquiēns mīllēnsimus, -a, -um	quīna mīlia	quīnquiēns mīliēns
CCIOO	decem mīlia	deciēns mīllēnsimus, -a, -um	dēna mīlia	deciēns mīliēns

¹⁹⁸ Cardinal forms using duodē- and ūndē- are rare for some numbers and not found in the preserved literature for 68, 69, and 98. Form all others periphrastically: e.g. 56 [sex et quīnquāgintā], 83 [trēs et octōgintā].

¹⁹⁹ The Roman numeral for mille becomes the symbol for infinity: ∞. The use of the symbol M for mīlle is by analogy with the symbol C, which was mistakenly understood as a letter abbreviation for centum, rather than as an abstract tally mark.

5.6 Thematic Verbal Paradigms - 1st Conjugation [am-ō , amā-re , amā-v-ī , amā-t-um]

ACTIVE

Present Active Indicative: amā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	am-ō	amā-mus
2 nd	amā-s	amā-tis
3 rd	ama-t	ama-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: am-ē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	am-e-m	am-ē-mus
2 nd	am-ē-s	am-ē-tis
3 rd	am-e-t	am-e-nt

Present Active Imperative: amā-te

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	amā-Ø	amā-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: amā-bā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-ba-m	amā-bā-mus
2 nd	amā-bā-s	amā-bā-tis
3 rd	amā-ba-t	amā-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: amā-rē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-re-m	amā-rē-mus
2 nd	amā-rē-s	amā-rē-tis
3 rd	amā-re-t	amā-re-nt

Future Active Indicative: amā-bi-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-b-ō	amā-bi-mus
2 nd	amā-bi-s	amā-bi-tis
3 rd	amā-bi-t	amā-bu-nt

Future Active Imperative: amā-tote

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	amā-tō	amā-tōte
3 rd	amā-tō	ama-ntō

Perfect Active Indicative: amā-v-imus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-v-ī	amā-v-imus
2 nd	amā-v-istī	amā-v-istis
3 rd	amā-v-it	amā-v-ērunt (-ēre)

PASSIVE

Present passive Indicative: amā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	am-or	amā-mur
2 nd	amā-ris (-re)	amā-minī
3 rd	amā-tur	ama-ntur

Present Passive Subjunctive: am-ē-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	am-e-r	am-ē-mur
2 nd	am-ē-ris (-re)	am-ē-minī
3 rd	am-ē-tur	am-e-ntur

Present Passive Imperative: amā-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	amā-re	amā-minī
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Passive Indicative: amā-bā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-ba-r	amā-bā-mur
2 nd	amā-bā-ris (-re)	amā-bā-minī
3 rd	amā-bā-tur	amā-ba-ntur

Imperfect Passive Subjunctive: amā-rē-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-re-r	amā-rē-mur
2 nd	amā-rē-ris (-re)	amā-rē-minī
3 rd	amā-rē-tur	amā-re-ntur

Future Passive Indicative: amā-bi-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-bo-r	amā-bi-mur
2 nd	amā-be-ris (-re)	amā-bi-minī
3 rd	amā-bi-tur	amā-bu-ntur

Future Passive Imperative: amā-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	amā-tor	amā-minī
3 rd	amā-tor	ama-ntor

Perfect Passive Indicative: amā-t-ī sumus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-t-us sum	amā-t-ī sumus
2 nd	amā-t-us es	amā-t-ī estis
3 rd	amā-t-us est	amā-t-ī sunt

Perfect Active Subjunctive: amā-v-erī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-v-erī-m	amā-v-erī-mus
2 nd	amā-v-erī-s	amā-v-erī-tis
3 rd	amā-v-erī-t	amā-v-erī-nt

Perfect Passive Subjunctive: amā-t-ī sīmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-t-us sim	amā-t-ī sīmus
2 nd	amā-t-us sīs	amā-t-ī sītis
3 rd	amā-t-us sit	amā-t-ī sint

Pluperfect Active Indicative: amā-v-erā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-v-erā-m	amā-v-erā-mus
2 nd	amā-v-erā-s	amā-v-erā-tis
3 rd	amā-v-erā-t	amā-v-erā-nt

Pluperfect Passive Indicative: amā-t-ī erāmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-t-us eram	amā-t-ī erāmus
2 nd	amā-t-us erās	amā-t-ī erātis
3 rd	amā-t-us erat	amā-t-ī erant

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: amā-v-issē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-v-issē-m	amā-v-issē-mus
2 nd	amā-v-issē-s	amā-v-issē-tis
3 rd	amā-v-issē-t	amā-v-issē-nt

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive: amā-t-ī essēmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-t-us essem	amā-t-ī essēmus
2 nd	amā-t-us essēs	amā-t-ī essētis
3 rd	amā-t-us esset	amā-t-ī essent

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: amā-v-erī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-v-erī-ō	amā-v-erī-mus
2 nd	amā-v-erī-s	amā-v-erī-tis
3 rd	amā-v-erī-t	amā-v-erī-nt

Future-Perfect Passive Indicative: amā-t-ī erimus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	amā-t-us erō	amā-t-ī erimus
2 nd	amā-t-us eris	amā-t-ī eritis
3 rd	amā-t-us erit	amā-t-ī erunt

Present Active Participle: ama-nt-em

	Singular	Plural
N	amā-n-s	ama-nt-ēs
G	ama-nt-is	ama-nt-ium
D	ama-nt-ī	ama-nt-ibus
A	ama-nt-em	ama-nt-ēs
Ab	ama-nt-e (-ī)	ama-nt-ibus
V	amā-n-s	ama-nt-ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: amā-t-um

	Singular	Plural
N	amā-t-us	amā-t-ī
G	amā-t-ī	amā-t-ōrum
D	amā-t-ō	amā-t-īs
A	amā-t-um	amā-t-ōs
Ab	amā-t-ō	amā-t-īs
V	amā-t-e	amā-t-ī

Future Active Participle: amā-t-ūr-um

	Singular	Plural
N	amā-t-ūr-us	amā-t-ūr-ī
G	amā-t-ūr-ī	amā-t-ūr-ōrum
D	amā-t-ūr-ō	amā-t-ūr-īs
A	amā-t-ūr-um	amā-t-ūr-ōs
Ab	amā-t-ūr-ō	amā-t-ūr-īs
V	amā-t-ūr-e	amā-t-ūr-ī

Gerundive / Gerund: ama-nd-um

	Singular	Plural
N	ama-nd-us	ama-nd-ī
G	ama-nd-ī	ama-nd-ōrum
D	ama-nd-ō	ama-nd-īs
A	ama-nd-um	ama-nd-ōs
Ab	ama-nd-ō	ama-nd-īs
V	ama-nd-e	ama-nd-ī

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	amā-re
<i>Perfect</i>	amā-v-isse
<i>Future</i>	amā-t-ūr-um esse

Passive Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	amā-rī
<i>Perfect</i>	amā-t-um esse
<i>Future</i>	amā-t-um īrī
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	amā-t-um fore

2nd Conjugation [habē-ō , habē-re , hab-u-ī , habi-t-um]

ACTIVE

Present Active Indicative: habē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habē-ō	habē-mus
2 nd	habē-s	habē-tis
3 rd	habē-t	habē-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: habē-ā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habē-a-m	habē-ā-mus
2 nd	habē-ā-s	habē-ā-tis
3 rd	habē-a-t	habē-a-nt

Present Active Imperative: habē-te

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	habē-Ø	habē-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: habē-bā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habē-ba-m	habē-bā-mus
2 nd	habē-bā-s	habē-bā-tis
3 rd	habē-ba-t	habē-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: habē-rē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habē-re-m	habē-rē-mus
2 nd	habē-rē-s	habē-rē-tis
3 rd	habē-re-t	habē-re-nt

Future Active Indicative: habē-bi-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habē-b-ō	habē-bi-mus
2 nd	habē-bi-s	habē-bi-tis
3 rd	habē-bi-t	habē-bu-nt

Future Active Imperative: habē-tote

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	habē-tō	habē-tōte
3 rd	habē-tō	habē-ntō

Perfect Active Indicative: hab-u-imus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	hab-u-ī	hab-u-imus
2 nd	hab-u-istī	hab-u-istis
3 rd	hab-u-it	hab-u-ērunt (-ēre)

PASSIVE

Present passive Indicative: habē-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habē-or	habē-mur
2 nd	habē-ris (-re)	habē-minī
3 rd	habē-tur	habē-ntur

Present Passive Subjunctive: habē-ā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habē-a-r	habē-ā-mur
2 nd	habē-ā-ris (-re)	habē-ā-minī
3 rd	habē-ā-tur	habē-a-ntur

Present Passive Imperative: habē-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	habē-re	habē-minī
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Passive Indicative: habē-bā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habē-ba-r	habē-bā-mur
2 nd	habē-bā-ris (-re)	habē-bā-minī
3 rd	habē-bā-tur	habē-ba-ntur

Imperfect Passive Subjunctive: habē-rē-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habē-re-r	habē-rē-mur
2 nd	habē-rē-ris (-re)	habē-rē-minī
3 rd	habē-rē-tur	habē-re-ntur

Future Passive Indicative: habē-bi-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habē-bo-r	habē-bi-mur
2 nd	habē-be-ris (-re)	habē-bi-minī
3 rd	habē-bi-tur	habē-bu-ntur

Future Passive Imperative: habē-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	habē-tor	habē-minī
3 rd	habē-tor	habē-ntor

Perfect Passive Indicative: habi-t-ī sumus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habi-t-us sum	habi-t-ī sumus
2 nd	habi-t-us es	habi-t-ī estis
3 rd	habi-t-us est	habi-t-ī sunt

Perfect Active Subjunctive: hab-u-erī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	hab-u-erī-m	hab-u-erī-mus
2 nd	hab-u-erī-s	hab-u-erī-tis
3 rd	hab-u-erī-t	hab-u-erī-nt

Perfect Passive Subjunctive: habi-t-ī sīmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habī-t-us sim	habī-t-ī sīmus
2 nd	habī-t-us sīs	habī-t-ī sītis
3 rd	habī-t-us sit	habī-t-ī sint

Pluperfect Active Indicative: hab-u-erā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	hab-u-erā-m	hab-u-erā-mus
2 nd	hab-u-erā-s	hab-u-erā-tis
3 rd	hab-u-erā-t	hab-u-erā-nt

Pluperfect Passive Indicative: habi-t-ī erāmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habī-t-us eram	habī-t-ī erāmus
2 nd	habī-t-us erās	habī-t-ī erātis
3 rd	habī-t-us erat	habī-t-ī erant

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: hab-u-issē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	hab-u-issē-m	hab-u-issē-mus
2 nd	hab-u-issē-s	hab-u-issē-tis
3 rd	hab-u-issē-t	hab-u-issē-nt

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive: habi-t-ī essēmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habī-t-us essem	habī-t-ī essēmus
2 nd	habī-t-us essēs	habī-t-ī essētis
3 rd	habī-t-us esset	habī-t-ī essent

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: hab-u-erī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	hab-u-erī-ō	hab-u-erī-mus
2 nd	hab-u-erī-s	hab-u-erī-tis
3 rd	hab-u-erī-t	hab-u-erī-nt

Future-Perfect Passive Indicative: habi-t-ī erimus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	habī-t-us erō	habī-t-ī erimus
2 nd	habī-t-us eris	habī-t-ī eritis
3 rd	habī-t-us erit	habī-t-ī erunt

Present Active Participle: habē-nt-em

	Singular	Plural
N	habē-n-s	habē-nt-ēs
G	habē-nt-is	habē-nt-ium
D	habē-nt-ī	habē-nt-ibus
A	habē-nt-em	habē-nt-ēs
Ab	habē-nt-e (-ī)	habē-nt-ibus
V	habē-n-s	habē-nt-ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: habē-t-um

	Singular	Plural
N	habī-t-us	habī-t-ī
G	habī-t-ī	habī-t-ōrum
D	habī-t-ō	habī-t-īs
A	habī-t-um	habī-t-ōs
Ab	habī-t-ō	habī-t-īs
V	habī-t-e	habī-t-ī

Future Active Participle: habē-t-ūr-um

	Singular	Plural
N	habī-t-ūr-us	habī-t-ūr-ī
G	habī-t-ūr-ī	habī-t-ūr-ōrum
D	habī-t-ūr-ō	habī-t-ūr-īs
A	habī-t-ūr-um	habī-t-ūr-ōs
Ab	habī-t-ūr-ō	habī-t-ūr-īs
V	habī-t-ūr-e	habī-t-ūr-ī

Gerundive / Gerund: habē-nd-um

	Singular	Plural
N	habē-nd-us	habē-nd-ī
G	habē-nd-ī	habē-nd-ōrum
D	habē-nd-ō	habē-nd-īs
A	habē-nd-um	habē-nd-ōs
Ab	habē-nd-ō	habē-nd-īs
V	habē-nd-e	habē-nd-ī

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	habē-re
<i>Perfect</i>	hab-u-isse
<i>Future</i>	habī-t-ūr-um esse

Passive Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	habē-rī
<i>Perfect</i>	habī-t-um esse
<i>Future</i>	habī-t-um īrī
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	habī-t-um fore

3rd Conjugation [reg-ō , reg-e-re , rēx-ī , rēc-t-um]

ACTIVE

Present Active Indicative: reg-i-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	reg-ō	reg-i-mus
2 nd	reg-i-s	reg-i-tis
3 rd	reg-i-t	reg-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: reg-ā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	reg-a-m	reg-ā-mus
2 nd	reg-ā-s	reg-ā-tis
3 rd	reg-a-t	reg-a-nt

Present Active Imperative: reg-i-te

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	reg-e-Ø	reg-i-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: reg-ē-bā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	reg-ē-ba-m	reg-ē-bā-mus
2 nd	reg-ē-bā-s	reg-ē-bā-tis
3 rd	reg-ē-ba-t	reg-ē-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: reg-e-rē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	reg-e-re-m	reg-e-rē-mus
2 nd	reg-e-rē-s	reg-e-rē-tis
3 rd	reg-e-re-t	reg-e-re-nt

Future Active Indicative: reg-ē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	reg-a-m	reg-ē-mus
2 nd	reg-ē-s	reg-ē-tis
3 rd	reg-e-t	reg-e-nt

Future Active Imperative: reg-i-tote

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	reg-i-tō	reg-i-tōte
3 rd	reg-i-tō	reg-u-ntō

Perfect Active Indicative: rēc-s-imus (rēx-imus)

	Singular	Plural
1 st	rēc-s-ī	rēc-s-imus
2 nd	rēc-s-istī	rēc-s-istis
3 rd	rēc-s-it	rēc-s-ērunt (-ēre)

PASSIVE

Present passive Indicative: amā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	reg-o-r	reg-i-mur
2 nd	reg-e-ris (-re)	reg-i-minī
3 rd	reg-i-tur	reg-u-ntur

Present Passive Subjunctive: reg-ā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	reg-a-r	reg-ā-mur
2 nd	reg-ā-ris (-re)	reg-ā-minī
3 rd	reg-ā-tur	reg-a-ntur

Present Passive Imperative: reg-i-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	reg-e-re	reg-i-minī
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Passive Indicative: reg-ē-bā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	reg-ē-ba-r	reg-ē-bā-mur
2 nd	reg-ē-bā-ris (-re)	reg-ē-bā-minī
3 rd	reg-ē-bā-tur	reg-ē-ba-ntur

Imperfect Passive Subjunctive: reg-e-rē-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	reg-e-re-r	reg-e-rē-mur
2 nd	reg-e-rē-ris (-re)	reg-e-rē-minī
3 rd	reg-e-rē-tur	reg-e-re-ntur

Future Passive Indicative: reg-ē-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	reg-a-r	reg-ē-mur
2 nd	reg-ē-ris (-re)	reg-ē-minī
3 rd	reg-ē-tur	reg-e-ntur

Future Passive Imperative: reg-i-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	reg-i-tor	reg-i-minī
3 rd	reg-i-tor	reg-u-ntor

Perfect Passive Indicative: rēc-t-ī sumus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	rēc-t-us sum	rēc-t-ī sumus
2 nd	rēc-t-us es	rēc-t-ī estis
3 rd	rēc-t-us est	rēc-t-ī sunt

Perfect Active Subjunctive: **rēc-s-erī**-mus (rēx-)

	Singular	Plural
1 st	rēc-s-erī -m	rēc-s-erī -mus
2 nd	rēc-s-erī -s	rēc-s-erī -tis
3 rd	rēc-s-erī -t	rēc-s-erī -nt

Pluperfect Active Indicative: **rēc-s-erā**-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	rēc-s-erā -m	rēc-s-erā -mus
2 nd	rēc-s-erā -s	rēc-s-erā -tis
3 rd	rēc-s-erā -t	rēc-s-erā -nt

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: **rēc-s-issē**-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	rēc-s-issē -m	rēc-s-issē -mus
2 nd	rēc-s-issē -s	rēc-s-issē -tis
3 rd	rēc-s-issē -t	rēc-s-issē -nt

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: **rēc-s-erī**-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	rēc-s-erī -ō	rēc-s-erī -mus
2 nd	rēc-s-erī -s	rēc-s-erī -tis
3 rd	rēc-s-erī -t	rēc-s-erī -nt

Present Active Participle: **reg-e-nt-em**

	Singular	Plural
N	reg-ē-n -s	reg-e-nt-ēs
G	reg-e-nt -is	reg-e-nt-ium
D	reg-e-nt -ī	reg-e-nt-ibus
A	reg-e-nt-em	reg-e-nt-ēs
Ab	reg-e-nt-e (-ī)	reg-e-nt-ibus
V	reg-ē-n -s	reg-e-nt-ēs

Future Active Participle: **rēc-t-ūr**-um

	Singular	Plural
N	rēc-t-ūr -us	rēc-t-ūr -ī
G	rēc-t-ūr -ī	rēc-t-ūr -ōrum
D	rēc-t-ūr -ō	rēc-t-ūr -īs
A	rēc-t-ūr -um	rēc-t-ūr -ōs
Ab	rēc-t-ūr -ō	rēc-t-ūr -īs
V	rēc-t-ūr -e	rēc-t-ūr -ī

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	reg-e-re
<i>Perfect</i>	rēc-s-isse (rēx-isse)
<i>Future</i>	rēc-t-ūr -um esse

Perfect Passive Subjunctive: **rēc-t-ī** sīmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	rēc-t -us sīm	rēc-t-ī sīmus
2 nd	rēc-t -us sīs	rēc-t-ī sītis
3 rd	rēc-t -us sit	rēc-t-ī sint

Pluperfect Passive Indicative: **rēc-t-ī** erāmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	rēc-t -us eram	rēc-t-ī erāmus
2 nd	rēc-t -us erās	rēc-t-ī erātis
3 rd	rēc-t -us erat	rēc-t-ī erant

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive: **rēc-t-ī** essēmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	rēc-t -us essem	rēc-t-ī essēmus
2 nd	rēc-t -us essēs	rēc-t-ī essētis
3 rd	rēc-t -us esset	rēc-t-ī essent

Future-Perfect Passive Indicative: **rēc-t-ī** erimus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	rēc-t -us erō	rēc-t-ī erimus
2 nd	rēc-t -us eris	rēc-t-ī eritis
3 rd	rēc-t -us erit	rēc-t-ī erunt

Perfect Passive Participle: **rēc-t-um**

	Singular	Plural
N	rēc-t -us	rēc-t-ī
G	rēc-t -ī	rēc-t-ōrum
D	rēc-t -ō	rēc-t-īs
A	rēc-t-um	rēc-t-ōs
Ab	rēc-t -ō	rēc-t-īs
V	rēc-t -e	rēc-t-ī

Gerundive / Gerund: **reg-e-nd**-um

	Singular	Plural
N	reg-e-nd -us	reg-e-nd -ī
G	reg-e-nd -ī	reg-e-nd -ōrum
D	reg-e-nd -ō	reg-e-nd -īs
A	reg-e-nd-um	reg-e-nd -ōs
Ab	reg-e-nd -ō	reg-e-nd -īs
V	reg-e-nd -e	reg-e-nd -ī

Some 3rd Declension verbs also have Gerundives/Gerunds formed with [-u-]: e.g. [reg-u-nd-us].

Passive Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	reg -ī
<i>Perfect</i>	rēc-t -um esse
<i>Future</i>	rēc-t -um īrī
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	rēc-t -um fore

3rd Conjugation in -iō [capi-ō , cap-e-re , cēp-ī , cap-t-um]

ACTIVE

Present Active Indicative: capi-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	capi-ō	capi-mus
2 nd	capi-s	capi-tis
3 rd	capi-t	capi-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: capi-ā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	capi-a-m	capi-ā-mus
2 nd	capi-ā-s	capi-ā-tis
3 rd	capi-a-t	capi-a-nt

Present Active Imperative: capi-te

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	cape-Ø	capi-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: capi-ē-bā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	capi-ē-ba-m	capi-ē-bā-mus
2 nd	capi-ē-bā-s	capi-ē-bā-tis
3 rd	capi-ē-ba-t	capi-ē-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: cape-rē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cape-re-m	cape-rē-mus
2 nd	cape-rē-s	cape-rē-tis
3 rd	cape-re-t	cape-re-nt

Future Active Indicative: capi-ē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	capi-a-m	capi-ē-mus
2 nd	capi-ē-s	capi-ē-tis
3 rd	capi-e-t	capi-e-nt

Future Active Imperative: capi-tote

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	capi-tō	capi-tōte
3 rd	capi-tō	capi-u-ntō

Perfect Active Indicative: cēp-imus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cēp-ī	cēp-imus
2 nd	cēp-istī	cēp-istis
3 rd	cēp-it	cēp-ērunt (-ēre)

PASSIVE

Present passive Indicative: capi-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	capi-o-r	capi-mur
2 nd	cape-ris (-re)	capi-minī
3 rd	capi-tur	capi-u-ntur

Present Passive Subjunctive: capi-ā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	capi-a-r	capi-ā-mur
2 nd	capi-ā-ris (-re)	capi-ā-minī
3 rd	capi-ā-tur	capi-a-ntur

Present Passive Imperative: capi-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	cape-re	capi-minī
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Passive Indicative: capi-ē-bā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	capi-ē-ba-r	capi-ē-bā-mur
2 nd	capi-ē-bā-ris (-re)	capi-ē-bā-minī
3 rd	capi-ē-bā-tur	capi-ē-ba-ntur

Imperfect Passive Subjunctive: cape-rē-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cape-re-r	cape-rē-mur
2 nd	cape-rē-ris (-re)	cape-rē-minī
3 rd	cape-rē-tur	cape-re-ntur

Future Passive Indicative: capi-ē-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	capi-a-r	capi-ē-mur
2 nd	capi-ē-ris (-re)	capi-ē-minī
3 rd	capi-ē-tur	capi-e-ntur

Future Passive Imperative: capi-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	capi-tor	capi-minī
3 rd	capi-tor	capi-u-ntor

Perfect Passive Indicative: cap-t-ī sumus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cap-t-us sum	cap-t-ī sumus
2 nd	cap-t-us es	cap-t-ī estis
3 rd	cap-t-us est	cap-t-ī sunt

Perfect Active Subjunctive: cēp-erī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cēp-eri-m	cēp-erī-mus
2 nd	cēp-erī-s	cēp-erī-tis
3 rd	cēp-eri-t	cēp-eri-nt

Pluperfect Active Indicative: cēp-erā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cēp-erā-m	cēp-erā-mus
2 nd	cēp-erā-s	cēp-erā-tis
3 rd	cēp-erā-t	cēp-erā-nt

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: cēp-issē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cēp-isse-m	cēp-issē-mus
2 nd	cēp-issē-s	cēp-issē-tis
3 rd	cēp-isse-t	cēp-isse-nt

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: cēp-eri-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cēp-er-ō	cēp-eri-mus
2 nd	cēp-eri-s	cēp-eri-tis
3 rd	cēp-eri-t	cēp-eri-nt

Present Active Participle: capi-e-nt-em

	Singular	Plural
N	capi-ē-n-s	capi-e-nt-ēs
G	capi-e-nt-is	capi-e-nt-ium
D	capi-e-nt-ī	capi-e-nt-ibus
A	capi-e-nt-em	capi-e-nt-ēs
Ab	capi-e-nt-e (-ī)	capi-e-nt-ibus
V	capi-ē-n-s	capi-e-nt-ēs

Future Active Participle: cap-t-ūr-um

	Singular	Plural
N	cap-t-ūr-us	cap-t-ūr-ī
G	cap-t-ūr-ī	cap-t-ūr-ōrum
D	cap-t-ūr-ō	cap-t-ūr-īs
A	cap-t-ūr-um	cap-t-ūr-ōs
Ab	cap-t-ūr-ō	cap-t-ūr-īs
V	cap-t-ūr-e	cap-t-ūr-ī

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	cape-re
<i>Perfect</i>	cēp-isse
<i>Future</i>	cap-t-ūr-um esse

Perfect Passive Subjunctive: cap-t-ī sīmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cap-t-us sim	cap-t-ī sīmus
2 nd	cap-t-us sīs	cap-t-ī sītis
3 rd	cap-t-us sit	cap-t-ī sint

Pluperfect Passive Indicative: cap-t-ī erāmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cap-t-us eram	cap-t-ī erāmus
2 nd	cap-t-us erās	cap-t-ī erātis
3 rd	cap-t-us erat	cap-t-ī erant

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive: cap-t-ī essēmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cap-t-us essem	cap-t-ī essēmus
2 nd	cap-t-us essēs	cap-t-ī essētis
3 rd	cap-t-us esset	cap-t-ī essent

Future-Perfect Passive Indicative: cap-t-ī erimus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	cap-t-us erō	cap-t-ī erimus
2 nd	cap-t-us eris	cap-t-ī eritis
3 rd	cap-t-us erit	cap-t-ī erunt

Perfect Passive Participle: cap-t-um

	Singular	Plural
N	cap-t-us	cap-t-ī
G	cap-t-ī	cap-t-ōrum
D	cap-t-ō	cap-t-īs
A	cap-t-um	cap-t-ōs
Ab	cap-t-ō	cap-t-īs
V	cap-t-e	cap-t-ī

Gerundive / Gerund: capi-e-nd-um

	Singular	Plural
N	capi-e-nd-us	capi-e-nd-ī
G	capi-e-nd-ī	capi-e-nd-ōrum
D	capi-e-nd-ō	capi-e-nd-īs
A	capi-e-nd-um	capi-e-nd-ōs
Ab	capi-e-nd-ō	capi-e-nd-īs
V	capi-e-nd-e	capi-e-nd-ī

Passive Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	cap-ī
<i>Perfect</i>	cap-t-um esse
<i>Future</i>	cap-t-um īrī
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	cap-t-um fore

4th Conjugation [audi-ō , audī-re , audī-v-ī , audī-t-um]

ACTIVE

Present Active Indicative: audi-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audi-ō	audī-mus
2 nd	audī-s	audī-tis
3 rd	audi-t	audi-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: audi-ā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audi-a-m	audi-ā-mus
2 nd	audi-ā-s	audi-ā-tis
3 rd	audi-a-t	audi-a-nt

Present Active Imperative: audī-te

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	audī-Ø	audī-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: audī-bā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audi-ē-ba-m	audi-ē-bā-mus
2 nd	audi-ē-bā-s	audi-ē-bā-tis
3 rd	audi-ē-ba-t	audi-ē-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: audī-rē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-re-m	audī-rē-mus
2 nd	audī-rē-s	audī-rē-tis
3 rd	audī-re-t	audī-re-nt

Future Active Indicative: audi-ē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audi-a-m	audi-ē-mus
2 nd	audi-ē-s	audi-ē-tis
3 rd	audi-e-t	audi-e-nt

Future Active Imperative: audī-tote

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	audī-tō	audī-tōte
3 rd	audī-tō	audi-ntō

Perfect Active Indicative: audī-v-imus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-v-ī	audī-v-imus
2 nd	audī-v-istī	audī-v-istis
3 rd	audī-v-it	audī-v-ērunt (-ēre)

PASSIVE

Present passive Indicative: audī-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audi-or	audī-mur
2 nd	audī-ris (-re)	audī-minī
3 rd	audī-tur	audi-u-ntur

Present Passive Subjunctive: audi-ā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audi-a-r	audi-ā-mur
2 nd	audi-ā-ris (-re)	audi-ā-minī
3 rd	audi-ā-tur	audi-a-ntur

Present Passive Imperative: audī-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	audī-re	audī-minī
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Passive Indicative: audī-bā-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audi-ē-ba-r	audi-ē-bā-mur
2 nd	audi-ē-bā-ris (-re)	audi-ē-bā-minī
3 rd	audi-ē-bā-tur	audi-ē-ba-ntur

Imperfect Passive Subjunctive: audī-rē-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-re-r	audī-rē-mur
2 nd	audī-rē-ris (-re)	audī-rē-minī
3 rd	audī-rē-tur	audī-re-ntur

Future Passive Indicative: audi-ē-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audi-a-r	audi-ē-mur
2 nd	audi-ē-ris (-re)	audi-ē-minī
3 rd	audi-ē-tur	audi-e-ntur

Future Passive Imperative: audī-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	audī-tor	audī-minī
3 rd	audī-tor	audi-ntor

Perfect Passive Indicative: audī-t-ī sumus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-t-us sum	audī-t-ī sumus
2 nd	audī-t-us es	audī-t-ī estis
3 rd	audī-t-us est	audī-t-ī sunt

<i>Perfect Active Subjunctive:</i> audī-v-erī -mus		
	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-v-erī -m	audī-v-erī -mus
2 nd	audī-v-erī -s	audī-v-erī -tis
3 rd	audī-v-erī -t	audī-v-erī -nt

<i>Perfect Passive Subjunctive:</i> audī-t-ī sīmus		
	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-t-ī -us sim	audī-t-ī sīmus
2 nd	audī-t-ī -us sīs	audī-t-ī sītis
3 rd	audī-t-ī -us sit	audī-t-ī sint

<i>Pluperfect Active Indicative:</i> audī-v-erā -mus		
	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-v-erā -m	audī-v-erā -mus
2 nd	audī-v-erā -s	audī-v-erā -tis
3 rd	audī-v-erā -t	audī-v-erā -nt

<i>Pluperfect Passive Indicative:</i> audī-t-ī erāmus		
	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-t-ī -us eram	audī-t-ī erāmus
2 nd	audī-t-ī -us erās	audī-t-ī erātis
3 rd	audī-t-ī -us erat	audī-t-ī erant

<i>Pluperfect Active Subjunctive:</i> audī-v-issē -mus		
	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-v-issē -m	audī-v-issē -mus
2 nd	audī-v-issē -s	audī-v-issē -tis
3 rd	audī-v-issē -t	audī-v-issē -nt

<i>Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive:</i> audī-t-ī essēmus		
	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-t-ī -us essem	audī-t-ī essēmus
2 nd	audī-t-ī -us essēs	audī-t-ī essētis
3 rd	audī-t-ī -us esset	audī-t-ī essent

<i>Future-Perfect Active Indicative:</i> audī-v-erī -mus		
	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-v-erī -ō	audī-v-erī -mus
2 nd	audī-v-erī -s	audī-v-erī -tis
3 rd	audī-v-erī -t	audī-v-erī -nt

<i>Future-Perfect Passive Indicative:</i> audī-t-ī erimus		
	Singular	Plural
1 st	audī-t-ī -us erō	audī-t-ī erimus
2 nd	audī-t-ī -us eris	audī-t-ī eritis
3 rd	audī-t-ī -us erit	audī-t-ī erunt

<i>Present Active Participle M/F:</i> audi-e-nt -em		
	Singular	Plural
N	audi-ē-n -s	audi-e-nt-ēs
G	audi-e-nt -is	audi-e-nt-ium
D	audi-e-nt-ī	audi-e-nt-ibus
A	audi-e-nt -em	audi-e-nt-ēs
Ab	audi-e-nt-e (-ī)	audi-e-nt-ibus
V	audi-ē-n -s	audi-e-nt-ēs

<i>Perfect Passive Participle M:</i> audī-t-um		
	Singular	Plural
N	audī-t-um	audī-t-ī
G	audī-t-ī	audī-t-ōrum
D	audī-t-ō	audī-t-īs
A	audī-t-um	audī-t-ōs
Ab	audī-t-ō	audī-t-īs
V	audī-t-e	audī-t-ī

<i>Future Active Participle M:</i> audī-t-ūr -um		
	Singular	Plural
N	audī-t-ūr -us	audī-t-ūr-ī
G	audī-t-ūr-ī	audī-t-ūr-ōrum
D	audī-t-ūr-ō	audī-t-ūr-īs
A	audī-t-ūr -um	audī-t-ūr-ōs
Ab	audī-t-ūr-ō	audī-t-ūr-īs
V	audī-t-ūr-e	audī-t-ūr-ī

<i>Gerundive M / Gerund:</i> audi-e-nd -um		
	Singular	Plural
N	audi-e-nd -us	audi-e-nd-ī
G	audi-e-nd-ī	audi-e-nd-ōrum
D	audi-e-nd-ō	audi-e-nd-īs
A	audi-e-nd-um	audi-e-nd-ōs
Ab	audi-e-nd-ō	audi-e-nd-īs
V	audi-e-nd-e	audi-e-nd-ī

Active Infinitives:	
<i>Present</i>	audī-re
<i>Perfect</i>	audī-v-isse
<i>Future</i>	audī-t-ūr -um esse

Passive Infinitives:	
<i>Present</i>	audī-rī
<i>Perfect</i>	audī-t-um esse
<i>Future</i>	audī-t-um īrī
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	audī-t-um fore

5.7 Athematic Verbal Paradigms

[**s-u-m** , **es-se** , **fu-ī** , **fu-t-ūr-um**]

Present Active Indicative: **su-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	s-u-m	s-u-mus
2 nd	es-(s)	es-tis
3 rd	es-t	s-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: **s-ī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	s-i-m	s-ī-mus
2 nd	s-ī-s	s-ī-tis
3 rd	s-i-t	s-i-nt

Present Active Imperative: **es-te**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	es-Ø	es-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: **er-ā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	er-a-m	er-ā-mus
2 nd	er-ā-s	er-ā-tis
3 rd	er-a-t	er-a-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: **es-sē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	es-se-m	es-sē-mus
2 nd	es-sē-s	es-sē-tis
3 rd	es-se-t	es-se-nt

Future Active Indicative: **er-i-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	er-ō	er-i-mus
2 nd	er-i-s	er-i-tis
3 rd	er-i-t	er-u-nt

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	es-se
<i>Perfect</i>	fu-isse
<i>Future</i>	fu-t-ūr-um esse

Future Active Imperative: **es-tōte**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	es-tō	es-tōte
3 rd	es-tō	su-ntō

Perfect Active Indicative: **fu-imus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fu-ī	fu-imus
2 nd	fu-istī	fu-istis
3 rd	fu-it	fu-ērunt (-ēre)

Perfect Active Subjunctive: **fu-erī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fu-erī-m	fu-erī-mus
2 nd	fu-erī-s	fu-erī-tis
3 rd	fu-erī-t	fu-erī-nt

Pluperfect Active Indicative: **fu-erā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fu-erā-m	fu-erā-mus
2 nd	fu-erā-s	fu-erā-tis
3 rd	fu-erā-t	fu-erā-nt

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: **fu-issē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fu-issē-m	fu-issē-mus
2 nd	fu-issē-s	fu-issē-tis
3 rd	fu-issē-t	fu-issē-nt

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: **fu-erī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fu-erī-ō	fu-erī-mus
2 nd	fu-erī-s	fu-erī-tis
3 rd	fu-erī-t	fu-erī-nt

Present Active Participle: simple form not used in Classical Latin – in compounds: prae-**s-ē-n-s**, ab-**s-ē-n-s**, in-**s-ō-n-s**, and in Late Latin as ēns and entia

Perfect Passive Participle: none attested

Gerundive / **Gerund**: none attested

Passive Infinitives: none attested

[**pos-sum** , **pos-se** , **pot-u-ī** , —]

Present Active Indicative: **pos-su-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	pos-s-u-m	pos-s-u-mus
2 nd	pot-es-(s)	pot-es-tis
3 rd	pot-es-t	pos-s-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: **pos-s-ī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	pos-s-i-m	pos-s-ī-mus
2 nd	pos-s-ī-s	pos-s-ī-tis
3 rd	pos-s-i-t	pos-s-i-nt

Present Active Imperative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: **pot-er-ā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	pot-er-a-m	pot-er-ā-mus
2 nd	pot-er-ā-s	pot-er-ā-tis
3 rd	pot-er-a-t	pot-er-a-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: **pos-sē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	pos-se-m	pos-sē-mus
2 nd	pos-sē-s	pos-sē-tis
3 rd	pos-se-t	pos-se-nt

Future Active Indicative: **pot-er-i-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	pot-er-ō	pot-er-i-mus
2 nd	pot-er-i-s	pot-er-i-tis
3 rd	pot-er-i-t	pot-er-u-nt

Future Active Imperative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	pos-se
<i>Perfect</i>	pot-u-isse
<i>Future</i>	—

Perfect Active Indicative: **pot-u-imus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	pot-u-ī	pot-u-imus
2 nd	pot-u-istī	pot-u-istis
3 rd	pot-u-it	pot-u-ērunt (-ēre)

Perfect Active Subjunctive: **pot-u-erī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	pot-u-erī-m	pot-u-erī-mus
2 nd	pot-u-erī-s	pot-u-erī-tis
3 rd	pot-u-erī-t	pot-u-erī-nt

Pluperfect Active Indicative: **pot-u-erā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	pot-u-era-m	pot-u-erā-mus
2 nd	pot-u-erā-s	pot-u-erā-tis
3 rd	pot-u-era-t	pot-u-era-nt

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: **pot-u-issē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	pot-u-isse-m	pot-u-issē-mus
2 nd	pot-u-issē-s	pot-u-issē-tis
3 rd	pot-u-isse-t	pot-u-isse-nt

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: **pot-u-eri-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	pot-u-er-ō	pot-u-eri-mus
2 nd	pot-u-eri-s	pot-u-eri-tis
3 rd	pot-u-eri-t	pot-u-eri-nt

Present Active Adjective M/F: **pot-e-nt-em**

	Singular	Plural
N	pot-ē-n-s	pot-e-nt-ēs
G	pot-e-nt-is	pot-e-nt-ium
D	pot-e-nt-ī	pot-e-nt-ibus
A	pot-e-nt-em	pot-e-nt-ēs
Ab	pot-e-nt-e (-ī)	pot-e-nt-ibus
V	pot-ē-n-s	pot-e-nt-ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: none attested

Future Active Participle: none attested

Gerundive / Gerund: none attested

Passive Infinitives: none attested

[e-ō , ī-re , ī-v-ī , i-t-um]

Present Active Indicative: ī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	e-ō	ī-mus
2 nd	ī-s	ī-tis
3 rd	ī-t	e-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: e-ā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	e-a-m	e-ā-mus
2 nd	e-ā-s	e-ā-tis
3 rd	e-a-t	e-a-nt

Present Active Imperative: ī-te

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	ī-Ø	ī-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: ī-bā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	ī-ba-m	ī-bā-mus
2 nd	ī-bā-s	ī-bā-tis
3 rd	ī-ba-t	ī-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: ī-rē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	ī-re-m	ī-rē-mus
2 nd	ī-rē-s	ī-rē-tis
3 rd	ī-re-t	ī-re-nt

Future Active Indicative: ī-bi-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	ī-b-ō	ī-bi-mus
2 nd	ī-bi-s	ī-bi-tis
3 rd	ī-bi-t	ī-bu-nt

Future Active Imperative: ī-tote

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	ī-tō	ī-tōte
3 rd	ī-tō	e-u-ntō

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	ī-re
<i>Perfect</i>	ī-sse
<i>Future</i>	i-t-ūr-um esse

Perfect Active Indicative: i-imus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	i-ī	i-imus
2 nd	ī-stī	ī-stis
3 rd	ī-t	i-ērunt (-ēre)

Perfect Active Subjunctive: i-erī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	i-erī-m	i-erī-mus
2 nd	i-erī-s	i-erī-tis
3 rd	i-erī-t	i-erī-nt

Pluperfect Active Indicative: i-erā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	i-erā-m	i-erā-mus
2 nd	i-erā-s	i-erā-tis
3 rd	i-erā-t	i-erā-nt

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: ī-ssē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	ī-sse-m	ī-ssē-mus
2 nd	ī-ssē-s	ī-ssē-tis
3 rd	ī-sse-t	ī-sse-nt

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: i-eri-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	i-er-ō	i-eri-mus
2 nd	i-eri-s	i-eri-tis
3 rd	i-eri-t	i-eri-nt

Present Active Participle M/F: eu-nt-em

	Singular	Plural
N	i-ē-n-s	e-u-nt-ēs
G	e-u-nt-is	e-u-nt-ium
D	e-u-nt-ī	e-u-nt-ibus
A	e-u-nt-em	e-u-nt-ēs
Ab	e-u-nt-e (-ī)	e-u-nt-ibus
V	i-ē-n-s	e-u-nt-ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: i-t-us, -a, -um

Future Active Participle: i-t-ūr-us, -a, -um

Gerundive / Gerund: e-u-nd-us, -a, -um / e-u-nd-um

Passive Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	ī-rī
----------------	------

[**vol-ō** , **vel-le** , **vol-u-ī** , —]

Present Active Indicative: **vol-u-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	vol-ō	vol-u-mus
2 nd	v-ī-s	vul-tis
3 rd	vul-t	vol-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: **vel-ī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	vel-ī-m	vel-ī-mus
2 nd	vel-ī-s	vel-ī-tis
3 rd	vel-ī-t	vel-ī-nt

Present Active Imperative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: **vol-ē-bā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	vol-ē-ba-m	vol-ē-bā-mus
2 nd	vol-ē-bā-s	vol-ē-bā-tis
3 rd	vol-ē-ba-t	vol-ē-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: **vel-lē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	vel-le-m	vel-lē-mus
2 nd	vel-lē-s	vel-lē-tis
3 rd	vel-le-t	vel-le-nt

Future Active Indicative: **vol-ē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	vol-a-m	vol-ē-mus
2 nd	vol-ē-s	vol-ē-tis
3 rd	vol-e-t	vol-e-nt

Future Active Imperative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	vel-le
<i>Perfect</i>	vol-u-isse
<i>Future</i>	—

Perfect Active Indicative: **vol-u-imus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	vol-u-ī	vol-u-imus
2 nd	vol-u-istī	vol-u-istis
3 rd	vol-u-it	vol-u-ērunt (-ēre)

Perfect Active Subjunctive: **vol-u-erī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	vol-u-erī-m	vol-u-erī-mus
2 nd	vol-u-erī-s	vol-u-erī-tis
3 rd	vol-u-erī-t	vol-u-erī-nt

Pluperfect Active Indicative: **vol-u-erā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	vol-u-era-m	vol-u-erā-mus
2 nd	vol-u-erā-s	vol-u-erā-tis
3 rd	vol-u-era-t	vol-u-era-nt

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: **vol-u-issē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	vol-u-isse-m	vol-u-issē-mus
2 nd	vol-u-issē-s	vol-u-issē-tis
3 rd	vol-u-isse-t	vol-u-isse-nt

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: **vol-u-erī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	vol-u-er-ō	vol-u-erī-mus
2 nd	vol-u-erī-s	vol-u-erī-tis
3 rd	vol-u-erī-t	vol-u-erī-nt

Present Active Participle M/F: **vol-e-nt-em**

	Singular	Plural
N	vol-ē-n-s	vol-e-nt-ēs
G	vol-e-nt-is	vol-e-nt-ium
D	vol-e-nt-ī	vol-e-nt-ibus
A	vol-e-nt-em	vol-e-nt-ēs
Ab	vol-e-nt-e (-ī)	vol-e-nt-ibus
V	vol-ē-n-s	vol-e-nt-ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: none attested

Future Active Participle: none attested

Gerundive / **Gerund**: none attested

Passive Infinitives: none attested

[**nōl-ō** , **nōl-le** , **nōl-u-ī** , —]

Present Active Indicative: **nōl-u-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	nōl-ō	nōl-u-mus
2 nd	nōn v-ī-s	nōn vul-tis
3 rd	nōn vul-t	nōl-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: **nōl-ī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	nōl-i-m	nōl-ī-mus
2 nd	nōl-ī-s	nōl-ī-tis
3 rd	nōl-i-t	nōl-i-nt

Present Active Imperative: **nōl-ī-te**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	nōl-ī	nōl-ī-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: **nōl-ē-bā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	nōl-ē-ba-m	nōl-ē-bā-mus
2 nd	nōl-ē-bā-s	nōl-ē-bā-tis
3 rd	nōl-ē-ba-t	nōl-ē-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: **nōl-lē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	nōl-le-m	nōl-lē-mus
2 nd	nōl-lē-s	nōl-lē-tis
3 rd	nōl-le-t	nōl-le-nt

Future Active Indicative: **nōl-ē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	nōl-a-m	nōl-ē-mus
2 nd	nōl-ē-s	nōl-ē-tis
3 rd	nōl-e-t	nōl-e-nt

Future Active Imperative: **nōl-ī-tote**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	nōl-ī-tō	nōl-ī-tōte
3 rd	nōl-ī-tō	nōl-u-ntō

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	nōl-le
<i>Perfect</i>	nōl-u-isse
<i>Future</i>	—

Perfect Active Indicative: **nōl-u-imus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	nōl-u-ī	nōl-u-imus
2 nd	nōl-u-istī	nōl-u-istis
3 rd	nōl-u-it	nōl-u-ērunt (-ēre)

Perfect Active Subjunctive: **nōl-u-erī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	nōl-u-erī-m	nōl-u-erī-mus
2 nd	nōl-u-erī-s	nōl-u-erī-tis
3 rd	nōl-u-erī-t	nōl-u-erī-nt

Pluperfect Active Indicative: **nōl-u-erā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	nōl-u-erā-m	nōl-u-erā-mus
2 nd	nōl-u-erā-s	nōl-u-erā-tis
3 rd	nōl-u-erā-t	nōl-u-erā-nt

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: **nōl-u-issē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	nōl-u-isse-m	nōl-u-issē-mus
2 nd	nōl-u-issē-s	nōl-u-issē-tis
3 rd	nōl-u-isse-t	nōl-u-isse-nt

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: **nōl-u-erī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	nōl-u-er-ō	nōl-u-erī-mus
2 nd	nōl-u-erī-s	nōl-u-erī-tis
3 rd	nōl-u-erī-t	nōl-u-erī-nt

Present Active Participle M/F: **nōl-e-nt-em**

	Singular	Plural
N	nōl-ē-n-s	nōl-e-nt-ēs
G	nōl-e-nt-is	nōl-e-nt-ium
D	nōl-e-nt-ī	nōl-e-nt-ibus
A	nōl-e-nt-em	nōl-e-nt-ēs
Ab	nōl-e-nt-e (-ī)	nōl-e-nt-ibus
V	nōl-ē-n-s	nōl-e-nt-ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: none attested

Future Active Participle: none attested

Gerundive / **Gerund**: none attested

Passive Infinitives: none attested

[**māl-ō** , **māl-le** , **māl-u-ī** , —]

Present Active Indicative: **māl-u-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	māl-ō	māl-u-mus
2 nd	māv-ī-s	māvul-tis
3 rd	māvul-t	māl-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: **māl-ī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	māl-i-m	māl-ī-mus
2 nd	māl-ī-s	māl-ī-tis
3 rd	māl-i-t	māl-i-nt

Present Active Imperative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: **māl-ē-bā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	māl-ē-ba-m	māl-ē-bā-mus
2 nd	māl-ē-bā-s	māl-ē-bā-tis
3 rd	māl-ē-ba-t	māl-ē-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: **māl-lē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	māl-le-m	māl-lē-mus
2 nd	māl-lē-s	māl-lē-tis
3 rd	māl-le-t	māl-le-nt

Future Active Indicative: **māl-ē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	māl-a-m	māl-ē-mus
2 nd	māl-ē-s	māl-ē-tis
3 rd	māl-e-t	māl-e-nt

Future Active Imperative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Active Infinitives:

Present **māl-le**

Perfect **māl-u-isse**

Perfect Active Indicative: **māl-u-imus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	māl-u-ī	māl-u-imus
2 nd	māl-u-istī	māl-u-istis
3 rd	māl-u-it	māl-u-ērunt (-ēre)

Perfect Active Subjunctive: **māl-u-erī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	māl-u-eri-m	māl-u-erī-mus
2 nd	māl-u-erī-s	māl-u-erī-tis
3 rd	māl-u-eri-t	māl-u-eri-nt

Pluperfect Active Indicative: **māl-u-erā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	māl-u-era-m	māl-u-erā-mus
2 nd	māl-u-erā-s	māl-u-erā-tis
3 rd	māl-u-era-t	māl-u-era-nt

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: **māl-u-issē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	māl-u-isse-m	māl-u-issē-mus
2 nd	māl-u-issē-s	māl-u-issē-tis
3 rd	māl-u-isse-t	māl-u-isse-nt

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: **māl-u-eri-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	māl-u-er-ō	māl-u-eri-mus
2 nd	māl-u-eri-s	māl-u-eri-tis
3 rd	māl-u-eri-t	māl-u-eri-nt

Present Active Participle M/F: none attested

Perfect Passive Participle: none attested

Future Active Participle: none attested

Gerundive / ***Gerund***: none attested

Passive Infinitives: none

[**fer-ō** , **fer-re** , **tul-ī** , **lā-t-um**]

ACTIVE

Present Active Indicative: **fer-i-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fer-ō	fer-i-mus
2 nd	fer-s	fer-tis
3 rd	fer-t	fer-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: **fer-ā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fer-a-m	fer-ā-mus
2 nd	fer-ā-s	fer-ā-tis
3 rd	fer-a-t	fer-a-nt

Present Active Imperative: **fer-te**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	fer	fer-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: **fer-ē-bā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fer-ē-ba-m	fer-ē-bā-mus
2 nd	fer-ē-bā-s	fer-ē-bā-tis
3 rd	fer-ē-ba-t	fer-ē-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: **fer-rē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fer-re-m	fer-rē-mus
2 nd	fer-rē-s	fer-rē-tis
3 rd	fer-re-t	fer-re-nt

Future Active Indicative: **fer-ē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fer-a-m	fer-ē-mus
2 nd	fer-ē-s	fer-ē-tis
3 rd	fer-e-t	fer-e-nt

Future Active Imperative: **fer-tōte**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	fer-tō	fer-tōte
3 rd	fer-tō	fer-u-ntō

Perfect Active Indicative: **tul-imus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	tul-ī	tul-imus
2 nd	tul-istī	tul-istis
3 rd	tul-it	tul-ērunt (-ēre)

PASSIVE

Present passive Indicative: **fer-i-mur**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fer-or	fer-i-mur
2 nd	fer-ris (-re)	fer-i-minī
3 rd	fer-tur	fer-u-ntur

Present Passive Subjunctive: **fer-ā-mur**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fer-a-r	fer-ā-mur
2 nd	fer-ā-ris (-re)	fer-ā-minī
3 rd	fer-ā-tur	fer-a-ntur

Present Passive Imperative: **fer-i-minī**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	fer-re	fer-i-minī
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Passive Indicative: **fer-ē-bā-mur**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fer-ē-ba-r	fer-ē-bā-mur
2 nd	fer-ē-bā-ris (-re)	fer-ē-bā-minī
3 rd	fer-ē-bā-tur	fer-ē-ba-ntur

Imperfect Passive Subjunctive: **fer-rē-mur**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fer-re-r	fer-rē-mur
2 nd	fer-rē-ris (-re)	fer-rē-minī
3 rd	fer-rē-tur	fer-re-ntur

Future Passive Indicative: **fer-ē-mur**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fer-a-r	fer-ē-mur
2 nd	fer-ē-ris (-re)	fer-ē-minī
3 rd	fer-ē-tur	fer-e-ntur

Future Passive Imperative: **fer-i-minī**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	fer-tor	fer-i-minī
3 rd	fer-tor	fer-u-ntor

Perfect Passive Indicative: **lā-t-ī sumus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	lā-t-us sum	lā-t-ī sumus
2 nd	lā-t-us es	lā-t-ī estis
3 rd	lā-t-us est	lā-t-ī sunt

Perfect Active Subjunctive: tul-erī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	tul-erī-m	tul-erī-mus
2 nd	tul-erī-s	tul-erī-tis
3 rd	tul-erī-t	tul-erī-nt

Perfect Passive Subjunctive: lā-t-ī sīmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	lā-t-us sim	lā-t-ī sīmus
2 nd	lā-t-us sīs	lā-t-ī sītis
3 rd	lā-t-us sit	lā-t-ī sint

Pluperfect Active Indicative: tul-erā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	tul-erā-m	tul-erā-mus
2 nd	tul-erā-s	tul-erā-tis
3 rd	tul-erā-t	tul-erā-nt

Pluperfect Passive Indicative: lā-t-ī erāmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	lā-t-us eram	lā-t-ī erāmus
2 nd	lā-t-us erās	lā-t-ī erātis
3 rd	lā-t-us erat	lā-t-ī erant

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: tul-issē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	tul-issē-m	tul-issē-mus
2 nd	tul-issē-s	tul-issē-tis
3 rd	tul-issē-t	tul-issē-nt

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive: lā-t-ī essēmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	lā-t-us essem	lā-t-ī essēmus
2 nd	lā-t-us essēs	lā-t-ī essētis
3 rd	lā-t-us esset	lā-t-ī essent

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: tul-erī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	tul-er-ō	tul-erī-mus
2 nd	tul-erī-s	tul-erī-tis
3 rd	tul-erī-t	tul-erī-nt

Future-Perfect Passive Indicative: lā-t-ī erimus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	lā-t-us erō	lā-t-ī erimus
2 nd	lā-t-us eris	lā-t-ī eritis
3 rd	lā-t-us erit	lā-t-ī erunt

Present Active Participle M/F: fer-e-nt-em

	Singular	Plural
N	fer-ē-n-s	fer-e-nt-ēs
G	fer-e-nt-is	fer-e-nt-ium
D	fer-e-nt-ī	fer-e-nt-ibus
A	fer-e-nt-em	fer-e-nt-ēs
Ab	fer-e-nt-e (-ī)	fer-e-nt-ibus
V	fer-ē-n-s	fer-e-nt-ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: lā-t-um

	Singular	Plural
N	lā-t-us	lā-t-ī
G	lā-t-ī	lā-t-ōrum
D	lā-t-ō	lā-t-īs
A	lā-t-um	lā-t-ōs
Ab	lā-t-ō	lā-t-īs
V	lā-t-e	lā-t-ī

Future Active Participle: lā-t-ūr-um

	Singular	Plural
N	lā-t-ūr-us	lā-t-ūr-ī
G	lā-t-ūr-ī	lā-t-ūr-ōrum
D	lā-t-ūr-ō	lā-t-ūr-īs
A	lā-t-ūr-um	lā-t-ūr-ōs
Ab	lā-t-ūr-ō	lā-t-ūr-īs
V	lā-t-ūr-e	lā-t-ūr-ī

Gerundive / Gerund: fer-e-nd-um

	Singular	Plural
N	fer-e-nd-us	fer-e-nd-ī
G	fer-e-nd-ī	fer-e-nd-ōrum
D	fer-e-nd-ō	fer-e-nd-īs
A	fer-e-nd-um	fer-e-nd-ōs
Ab	fer-e-nd-ō	fer-e-nd-īs
V	fer-e-nd-e	fer-e-nd-ī

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	fer-re
<i>Perfect</i>	tul-isse
<i>Future</i>	lā-t-ūr-um esse

Passive Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	fer-rī
<i>Perfect</i>	lā-t-um esse
<i>Future</i>	lā-t-um īrī
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	lā-t-um fore

[**fī-ō** , **fī-e-rī** , **fac-t-us** sum]

Present Active Indicative: **fī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fī-ō	(fī-mus)
2 nd	fī-s	(fī-tis)
3 rd	fī-t	fī-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: **fī-ā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fī-a-m	fī-ā-mus
2 nd	fī-ā-s	fī-ā-tis
3 rd	fī-a-t	fī-a-nt

Present Active Imperative: **fī-te**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	fī	fī-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: **fī-ē-bā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fī-ē-ba-m	fī-ē-bā-mus
2 nd	fī-ē-bā-s	fī-ē-bā-tis
3 rd	fī-ē-ba-t	fī-ē-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: **fī-e-rē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fī-e-re-m	fī-e-rē-mus
2 nd	fī-e-rē-s	fī-e-rē-tis
3 rd	fī-e-re-t	fī-e-re-nt

Future Active Indicative: **fī-ē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fī-a-m	fī-ē-mus
2 nd	fī-ē-s	fī-ē-tis
3 rd	fī-e-t	fī-e-nt

Future Active Imperative: (**fī-tōte**)

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	fī-tō	(fī-tōte)
3 rd	—	—

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	fī-e-rī
<i>Perfect</i>	(fac-t-um esse)
<i>Future</i>	(fore)

Present Active Participle M/F: none attested

Perfect Passive Participle: (suppletive from *facere*)

Future Active Participle: none attested

Gerundive / **Gerund**: (suppletive from *facere*)

Passive Infinitives: none attested

[*fieri*] and [*facere*] function as suppletive verb: the two verbs each lack forms in common use that are supplied by forms derived from the other stem. The active forms of [*fieri*] are derived from the *Present* stem only, and these forms are used in place of the passive forms that could have been derived from the *Present* stem of [*facere*]: e.g. to express the idea “it becomes/is made”, Latin speakers used [*fit*] rather than [*facitur*]. There are no other forms of [*fieri*].

The *Imperative* forms are only found in early writers, and are rare.

[**d-ō** , **da-re** , **de-d-ī** , **da-t-um**] Resembling 1st conjugation, but many forms have [**da-**] not [**dā-**]

ACTIVE

Present Active Indicative: **da-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	d-ō	da-mus
2 nd	dā-s	da-tis
3 rd	da-t	da-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: **d-ē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	d-e-m	d-ē-mus
2 nd	d-ē-s	d-ē-tis
3 rd	d-e-t	d-e-nt

Present Active Imperative: **da-te**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	dā	da-te
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: **da-bā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-ba-m	da-bā-mus
2 nd	da-bā-s	da-bā-tis
3 rd	da-ba-t	da-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: **da-rē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-re-m	da-rē-mus
2 nd	da-rē-s	da-rē-tis
3 rd	da-re-t	da-re-nt

Future Active Indicative: **da-bi-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-b-ō	da-bi-mus
2 nd	da-bi-s	da-bi-tis
3 rd	da-bi-t	da-bu-nt

Future Active Imperative: **da-tōte**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	da-tō	da-tōte
3 rd	da-tō	da-ntō

Perfect Active Indicative: **de-d-imus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	de-d-ī	de-d-imus
2 nd	de-d-istī	de-d-istis
3 rd	de-d-it	de-d-ērunt (-ēre)

PASSIVE

Present passive Indicative: **da-mur**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	*d-or	da-mur
2 nd	da-ris (-re)	da-minī
3 rd	da-tur	da-ntur

Present Passive Subjunctive: **am-ē-mur**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	*d-e-r	d-ē-mur
2 nd	d-ē-ris (-re)	d-ē-minī
3 rd	d-ē-tur	d-e-ntur

Present Passive Imperative: **da-minī**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	da-re	da-minī
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Passive Indicative: **da-bā-mur**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-ba-r	da-bā-mur
2 nd	da-bā-ris (-re)	da-bā-minī
3 rd	da-bā-tur	da-ba-ntur

Imperfect Passive Subjunctive: **da-rē-mur**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-re-r	da-rē-mur
2 nd	da-rē-ris (-re)	da-rē-minī
3 rd	da-rē-tur	da-re-ntur

Future Passive Indicative: **da-bi-mur**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-bo-r	da-bi-mur
2 nd	da-be-ris (-re)	da-bi-minī
3 rd	da-bi-tur	da-bu-ntur

Future Passive Imperative: **da-minī**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	da-tor	da-minī
3 rd	da-tor	da-ntor

Perfect Passive Indicative: **da-t-ī sumus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-t-us sum	da-t-ī sumus
2 nd	da-t-us es	da-t-ī estis
3 rd	da-t-us est	da-t-ī sunt

Perfect Active Subjunctive: de-d-erī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	de-d-erī-m	de-d-erī-mus
2 nd	de-d-erī-s	de-d-erī-tis
3 rd	de-d-erī-t	de-d-erī-nt

Pluperfect Active Indicative: de-d-erā-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	de-d-erā-m	de-d-erā-mus
2 nd	de-d-erā-s	de-d-erā-tis
3 rd	de-d-erā-t	de-d-erā-nt

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: de-d-issē-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	de-d-issē-m	de-d-issē-mus
2 nd	de-d-issē-s	de-d-issē-tis
3 rd	de-d-issē-t	de-d-issē-nt

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: de-d-erī-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	de-d-erī-ō	de-d-erī-mus
2 nd	de-d-erī-s	de-d-erī-tis
3 rd	de-d-erī-t	de-d-erī-nt

Present Active Participle M/F: d-a-nt-em

	Singular	Plural
N	d-ā-n-s	d-a-nt-ēs
G	d-a-nt-is	d-a-nt-ium
D	d-a-nt-ī	d-a-nt-ibus
A	d-a-nt-em	d-a-nt-ēs
Ab	d-a-nt-e (-ī)	d-a-nt-ibus
V	d-ā-n-s	d-a-nt-ēs

Future Active Participle: da-t-ūr-um

	Singular	Plural
N	da-t-ūr-us	da-t-ūr-ī
G	da-t-ūr-ī	da-t-ūr-ōrum
D	da-t-ūr-ō	da-t-ūr-īs
A	da-t-ūr-um	da-t-ūr-ōs
Ab	da-t-ūr-ō	da-t-ūr-īs
V	da-t-ūr-e	da-t-ūr-ī

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	da-re
<i>Perfect</i>	de-d-isse
<i>Future</i>	da-t-ūr-um esse

Perfect Passive Subjunctive: da-t-ī sīmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-t-us sī	da-t-ī sīmus
2 nd	da-t-us sīs	da-t-ī sītis
3 rd	da-t-us sit	da-t-ī sint

Pluperfect Passive Indicative: da-t-ī erāmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-t-us eram	da-t-ī erāmus
2 nd	da-t-us erās	da-t-ī erātis
3 rd	da-t-us erat	da-t-ī erant

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive: da-t-ī essēmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-t-us essem	da-t-ī essēmus
2 nd	da-t-us essēs	da-t-ī essētis
3 rd	da-t-us esset	da-t-ī essent

Future-Perfect Passive Indicative: da-t-ī erimus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	da-t-us erō	da-t-ī erimus
2 nd	da-t-us eris	da-t-ī eritis
3 rd	da-t-us erit	da-t-ī erunt

Perfect Passive Participle: da-t-um

	Singular	Plural
N	da-t-us	da-t-ī
G	da-t-ī	da-t-ōrum
D	da-t-ō	da-t-īs
A	da-t-um	da-t-ōs
Ab	da-t-ō	da-t-īs
V	da-t-e	da-t-ī

Gerundive / Gerund: da-nd-um

	Singular	Plural
N	da-nd-us	da-nd-ī
G	da-nd-ī	da-nd-ōrum
D	da-nd-ō	da-nd-īs
A	da-nd-um	da-nd-ōs
Ab	da-nd-ō	da-nd-īs
V	da-nd-e	da-nd-ī

Passive Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	da-rī
<i>Perfect</i>	da-t-um esse
<i>Future</i>	da-t-um īrī
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	da-t-um fore

5.8 Defective Verbal Paradigms

[**inqu-a-m** , — , **inqui-ī** , —]

Present Active Indicative: **inqu-i-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	inqu-a-m	inqu-i-mus
2 nd	inqu-i-s	inqu-i-tis
3 rd	inqu-i-t	inqu-i-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Present Active Imperative: ***inqu-i-te**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	inqu-e	—
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: ***inqu-i-ē-bā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	inqu-i-ē-ba-t	—

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Future Active Indicative: ***inqu-i-ē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	inqu-i-ē-s	—
3 rd	inqu-i-e-t	—

Future Active Imperative: ***inqu-i-tōte**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	inqu-i-tō	—
3 rd	—	—

Active Infinitives: none attested

Perfect Active Indicative: ***inqu-imus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	inqui-ī	—
2 nd	inqu-īstī	—
3 rd	—	—

Perfect Active Subjunctive: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Pluperfect Active Indicative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Present Active Participle M/F: none attested

Perfect Passive Participle: none attested

Future Active Participle: none attested

Gerundive / **Gerund**: none attested

Passive Infinitives: none attested

[**āi-ō** , — , — , —]

Present Active Indicative: ***ai**-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	āi -ō	* ai -mus
2 nd	ai -s	* ai -tis
3 rd	ai -t	āi -u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: ***āi-ā**-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	āi-ā -s	—
3 rd	āi-a -t	āi-a -nt

Present Active Imperative: ***a**-i-te

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	aī	—
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: **āi-ē-bā**-mus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	āi-ē-ba -m	āi-ē-bā -mus
2 nd	āi-ē-bā -s	āi-ē-bā -tis
3 rd	āi-ē-ba -t	āi-ē-ba -nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: none attested

Future Active Indicative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Future Active Imperative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Active Infinitives: none attested

Perfect Active Indicative: ***a**-imus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	a -it	—

Perfect Active Subjunctive: none attested

Pluperfect Active Indicative: none attested

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: none attested

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: none attested

Present Active Participle M/F: none attested

Present Active Participle M/F: **āi-e-nt**-em

	Singular	Plural
N	āi-ē-n -s	āi-e-nt -ēs
G	āi-e-nt -is	āi-e-nt -ium
D	āi-e-nt -ī	āi-e-nt -ibus
A	āi-e-nt -em	āi-e-nt -ēs
Ab	āi-e-nt -e (-ī)	āi-e-nt -ibus
V	āi-ē-n -s	āi-e-nt -ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: none attested

Future Active Participle: none attested

*Gerundive / **Gerund**:* none attested

Passive Infinitives: none attested

The vowels of [āiō] are pronounced separately in the Classical Period, although they may undergo *synizesis* in earlier or vulgar Latin usage. As always, the intervocalic [i] was pronounced double – together with the previous vowel and as a glide: ai-yo. [āiō] was thus sometimes written [aiio]. It is this effect that produces a long first syllable in forms like [āiō] and [āiēbat]. [ais-ne] is often found written as [ain].

[— , **fā-rī** , **fā-t-um**]

Present Active Indicative: ***fā**-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	fā -tur	fa -ntur

Present Active Subjunctive: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Present Active Imperative: ***fā**-minī

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	fā -re	—
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Future Active Indicative: ***fā**-bi-mur

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fā -bo-r	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	fā -bi-tur	—

Future Active Imperative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Active Infinitives:

Present **fā-rī**

Perfect Active Indicative: ***fā**-t-ī sumus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	fā -t-us est	fā -t-ī sunt

Perfect Active Subjunctive: none attested

Pluperfect Active Indicative: ***fā**-t-ī erāmus

	Singular	Plural
1 st	fā -t-us eram	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	fā -t-us erat	—

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: none attested

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: none attested

Present Active Participle M/F: **fa**-nt-em

	Singular	Plural
N	fā -n-s	fa -nt-ēs
G	fa -nt-is	fa -nt-ium
D	fa -nt-ī	fa -nt-ibus
A	fa -nt-em	fa -nt-ēs
Ab	fa -nt-e (-ī)	fa -nt-ibus
V	fā -n-s	fa -nt-ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: **fā**-t-um

	Singular	Plural
N	fā -t-us	fā -t-ī
G	fā -t-ī	fā -t-ōrum
D	fā -t-ō	fā -t-īs
A	fā -t-um	fā -t-ōs
Ab	fā -t-ō	fā -t-īs
V	fā -t-e	fā -t-ī

Future Active Participle: none attested

Gerundive / **Gerund**: **fa**-nd-um

Supine: **fā**-tū

Passive Infinitives: none (deponent)

[**que-ō** , **quī-re** , **quī-v-ī** , —]

Present Active Indicative: **qu-ī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	que-ō	qu-ī-mus
2 nd	qu-ī-s	qu-ī-tis
3 rd	qu-i-t	que-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: **que-ā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	que-a-m	que-ā-mus
2 nd	que-ā-s	*que-ā-tis
3 rd	que-a-t	que-a-nt

Present Active Imperative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: ***quī-bā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	quī-ba-m	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	quī-ba-t	—

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: ***quī-rē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	quī-re-t	quī-re-nt

Future Active Indicative: ***quī-bi-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	quī-b-ō	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	quī-bu-nt

Future Active Imperative: none attested

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	—

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	quī-re
<i>Perfect</i>	quī-sse

Perfect Active Indicative: ***quī-u-imus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	quī-u-ī	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	quī-u-it	quī-u-ērunt (-ēre)

Perfect Active Subjunctive: ***quī-u-erī-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	quī-u-eri-t	quī-u-eri-nt

Pluperfect Active Indicative: none attested

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive: ***quī-u-issē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	—	—
3 rd	—	quī-u-isse-nt

Future-Perfect Active Indicative: none attested

Present Active Participle M/F: **qui-e-nt-em**

	Singular	Plural
N	qui-ē-n-s	qui-e-nt-ēs
G	qui-e-nt-is	qui-e-nt-ium
D	qui-e-nt-ī	qui-e-nt-ibus
A	qui-e-nt-em	qui-e-nt-ēs
Ab	qui-e-nt-e (-ī)	qui-e-nt-ibus
V	qui-ē-n-s	qui-e-nt-ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: **qui-t-us**, -a, -um

Future Active Participle: none attested

Gerundive / **Gerund**: none attested

Passive Infinitives: none attested

[quīre] is also attested in a few passive forms used with passive infinitives: [quītur, queuntur, quitus sum, queātur, queantur].

[**ed-ō** , **ede-re** , **ēd-ī** , **ē-s-um**]

The verb [edere] is largely a regular verb of the 3rd conjugation, but it has alternate forms using the *Athematic* stem [ed-].

Present Active Indicative: **ed-i-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	ed-ō	ed-i-mus
2 nd	ed-i-s (ēs)	ed-i-tis
3 rd	ed-i-t	ed-u-nt

Present Active Subjunctive: **ed-ā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	ed-a-m (ed-i-m)	ed-ā-mus (ed-ī-mus)
2 nd	ed-ā-s (ed-ī-s)	ed-ā-tis (ed-ī-tis)
3 rd	ed-a-t (ed-i-t)	ed-a-nt (ed-i-nt)

Present Active Imperative: **ed-i-te**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	ed-e (ēs)	ed-i-te (ēs-te)
3 rd	—	—

Imperfect Active Indicative: **ed-ē-bā-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	ed-ē-ba-m	ed-ē-bā-mus
2 nd	ed-ē-bā-s	ed-ē-bā-tis
3 rd	ed-ē-ba-t	ed-ē-ba-nt

Imperfect Active Subjunctive: **ed-e-rē-mus**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	ed-e-re-m	ed-e-rē-mus (ēs-sē-mus)
2 nd	ed-e-rēr-s (ēs-sē-s)	ed-e-rē-tis (ēs-sē-tis)
3 rd	ed-e-re-t (ēs-se-t)	ed-e-re-nt (ēs-se-nt)

Future Active Imperative: **ed-i-tōte**

	Singular	Plural
1 st	—	—
2 nd	ed-i-tō (ēs-tō)	ed-i-tōte (ēs-tōte)
3 rd	ed-i-tō (ēs-tō)	ed-u-ntō

Active Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	ede-re (ēs-se)
<i>Perfect</i>	ēd-isse
<i>Future</i>	ē-s-ūr-um esse

Present Active Participle M/F: **ed-e-nt-em**

	Singular	Plural
N	ed-ē-n-s	ed-e-nt-ēs
G	ed-e-nt-is	ed-e-nt-ium
D	ed-e-nt-ī	ed-e-nt-ibus
A	ed-e-nt-em	ed-e-nt-ēs
Ab	ed-e-nt-e (-ī)	ed-e-nt-ibus
V	ed-ē-n-s	ed-e-nt-ēs

Perfect Passive Participle: **ē-s-um**

	Singular	Plural
N	ē-s-us	ē-s-ī
G	ē-s-ī	ē-s-ōrum
D	ē-s-ō	ē-s-īs
A	ē-s-um	ē-s-ōs
Ab	ē-s-ō	ē-s-īs
V	ē-s-e	ē-s-ī

Future Active Participle: **ē-s-ūr-um**

	Singular	Plural
N	ē-s-ūr-us	ē-s-ūr-ī
G	ē-s-ūr-ī	ē-s-ūr-ōrum
D	ē-s-ūr-ō	ē-s-ūr-īs
A	ē-s-ūr-um	ē-s-ūr-ōs
Ab	ē-s-ūr-ō	ē-s-ūr-īs
V	ē-s-ūr-e	ē-s-ūr-ī

Gerundive / Gerund: **ed-e-nd-um**

	Singular	Plural
N	ed-e-nd-us	ed-e-nd-ī
G	ed-e-nd-ī	ed-e-nd-ōrum
D	ed-e-nd-ō	ed-e-nd-īs
A	ed-e-nd-um	ed-e-nd-ōs
Ab	ed-e-nd-ō	ed-e-nd-īs
V	ed-e-nd-e	ed-e-nd-ī

Passive Infinitives:

<i>Present</i>	ed-ī
----------------	-------------

5.9 Thematic Verbal Synopsis

Conjugation of [amō , amā-re , amā-v-ī , amā-t-um] in the 1st person, plural:

INDICATIVE

Active

Passive

<i>Present</i>	(2) amā-mus	(2) amā-mur
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-bā-mus	(2) amā-bā-mur
<i>Future</i>	(2) amā-bi-mus	(2) amā-bi-mur
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-imus	(4) amā-t-ī su-mus
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erā-mus	(4) amā-t-ī er-ā-mus
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erī-mus	(4) amā-t-ī er-i-mus

SUBJUNCTIVE

Active

Passive

<i>Present</i>	(2) am-ē-mus	(2) am-ē-mur
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-rē-mus	(2) amā-rē-mur
<i>Future</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erī-mus	(4) amā-t-ī s-ī-mus
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-issē-mus	(4) amā-t-ī es-sē-mus
<i>Future-Perfect</i>		

IMPERATIVE

Active

Passive

<i>Present</i>	(2) amā-te	(2) amā-minī
<i>Imperfect</i>		
<i>Future</i>	(2) amā-tōte	(2) amā-minī
<i>Perfect</i>		
<i>Pluperfect</i>		
<i>Future-Perfect</i>		

INFINITIVES**Active****Passive**

Present (2) amā-re (2) amā-rī

Imperfect

Future (4) amā-t-ūr-um es-se²⁰⁰ (2) amā-t-um ī-rī²⁰¹

Perfect (3) amā-v-isse (4) amā-t-um es-se²⁰²

Pluperfect

Future-Perfect (4) amā-t-um fo-re²⁰³

PARTICIPLES**Active****Passive**

Acc., Sing., Masc.

Present (2) ama-nt-em

Imperfect

Future (2) amā-t-ūr-um (2) ama-nd-um²⁰⁴

Perfect (4) amā-t-um

Pluperfect

Future-Perfect

²⁰⁰ This use of the *Future Active Participle* in the *Active Periphrastic* construction functions as a *Future Active Infinitive*.

²⁰¹ This use of the *Supine* in the *Accusative of End of Motion (Accusative of Purpose)* construction with [īrī] functions like a *Future Passive Infinitive*.

²⁰² The *Perfect Passive Participle* will agree with the *Subject* of [esse] in case, number, and gender.

²⁰³ The *Perfect Passive Participle* will agree with the *Subject* of [fore] in case, number, and gender.

²⁰⁴ Although the *Gerundive* is *Passive* in sense and conveys the necessity for *Future* action, it is not simply a *Future Passive Participle*, since it indicates what ought to be done rather than what is about to actually be done. In finite verbs, this modal force (should, ought) is the distinction between the *Subjunctive* and the *Indicative*.

5.10 Thematic Verb Synopses (6 Person/Number)

Conjugation of [amō , amā-re , amā-v-ī , amā-t-um] in the 1st person, singular:

INDICATIVE

Active

Passive

<i>Present</i>	(2) am-ō	(2) am-o-r
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-ba-m	(2) amā-ba-r
<i>Future</i>	(2) amā-b-ō	(2) amā-bo-r
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-ī	(4) amā-t-us su-m
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-er-a-m	(4) amā-t-us er-a-m
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-er-ō	(4) amā-t-us er-ō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Active

Passive

<i>Present</i>	(2) am-e-m	(2) am-e-r
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-re-m	(2) amā-re-r
<i>Future</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-eri-m	(4) amā-t-us s-i-m
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-is-se-m	(4) amā-t-us es-se-m
<i>Future-Perfect</i>		

Conjugation of [amō , amā-re , amā-v-ī , amā-t-um] in the 2nd person, singular:

<u>INDICATIVE</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Present</i>	(2) amā-s	(2) amā-ris
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-bā-s	(2) amā-bā-ris
<i>Future</i>	(2) amā-bi-s	(2) amā-be-ris
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-istī	(4) amā-t-us e-s
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erā-s	(4) amā-t-us er-ā-s
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-eri-s	(4) amā-t-us er-i-s

<u>SUBJUNCTIVE</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Present</i>	(2) am-ā-s	(2) am-ē-ris
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-rē-s	(2) amā-rē-ris
<i>Future</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erī-s	(4) amā-t-us s-ī-s
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-issē-s	(4) amā-t-us es-sē-s
<i>Future-Perfect</i>		

Conjugation of [amō , amā-re , amā-v-ī , amā-t-um] in the 3rd person, singular:

<u>INDICATIVE</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Present</i>	(2) amā-t	(2) amā-tur
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-ba-t	(2) amā-bā-tur
<i>Future</i>	(2) amā-bi-t	(2) amā-bi-tur
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-it	(4) amā-t-us es-t
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-er-a-t	(4) amā-t-us er-a-t
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-er-i-t	(4) amā-t-us er-i-t

<u>SUBJUNCTIVE</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Present</i>	(2) am-e-t	(2) am-ē-tur
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-re-t	(2) amā-rē-tur
<i>Future</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-er-i-t	(4) amā-t-us s-i-t
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-is-se-t	(4) amā-t-us es-se-t
<i>Future-Perfect</i>		

Conjugation of [amō , amā-re , amā-v-ī , amā-t-um] in the 1st person, plural:

<u>INDICATIVE</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Present</i>	(2) amā-mus	(2) amā-mur
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-bā-mus	(2) amā-bā-mur
<i>Future</i>	(2) amā-bi-mus	(2) amā-bi-mur
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-imus	(4) amā-t-ī su-mus
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erā-mus	(4) amā-t-ī er-ā-mus
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-eri-mus	(4) amā-t-ī er-i-mus

<u>SUBJUNCTIVE</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Present</i>	(2) am-ē-mus	(2) am-ē-mur
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-rē-mus	(2) amā-rē-mur
<i>Future</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erī-mus	(4) amā-t-ī s-ī-mus
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-issē-mus	(4) amā-t-ī es-sē-mus
<i>Future-Perfect</i>		

Conjugation of [amō , amā-re , amā-v-ī , amā-t-um] in the 2nd person, plural:

<u>INDICATIVE</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Present</i>	(2) amā-tis	(2) amā-minī
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-bā-tis	(2) amā-bā-minī
<i>Future</i>	(2) amā-bi-tis	(2) amā-bi-minī
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-istis	(4) amā-t-ī es-tis
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erā-tis	(4) amā-t-ī er-ā-tis
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erī-tis	(4) amā-t-ī er-ī-tis
<u>SUBJUNCTIVE</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Present</i>	(2) am-ē-tis	(2) am-ē-minī
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-rē-tis	(2) amā-rē-minī
<i>Future</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erī-tis	(4) amā-t-ī s-ī-tis
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-issē-tis	(4) amā-t-ī es-sē-tis
<i>Future-Perfect</i>		

Conjugation of [amō , amā-re , amā-v-ī , amā-t-um] in the 3rd person, plural:

<u>INDICATIVE</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Present</i>	(2) amā-nt	(2) amā-ntur
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-ba-nt	(2) amā-ba-ntur
<i>Future</i>	(2) amā-bu-nt	(2) amā-bu-ntur
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-ērunt	(4) amā-t-ī su-nt
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erā-nt	(4) amā-t-ī er-a-nt
<i>Future-Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erī-nt	(4) amā-t-ī er-u-nt

<u>SUBJUNCTIVE</u>	<u>Active</u>	<u>Passive</u>
<i>Present</i>	(2) am-e-nt	(2) am-e-ntur
<i>Imperfect</i>	(2) amā-re-nt	(2) amā-re-ntur
<i>Future</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	(3) amā-v-erī-nt	(4) amā-t-ī s-i-nt
<i>Pluperfect</i>	(3) amā-v-is-se-nt	(4) amā-t-ī es-se-nt
<i>Future-Perfect</i>		

5.11 Thematic Verb Paradigms (by Tense) - 1st Conjugation [am-ō , amā-re , amā-v-ī , amā-t-um]

THEMATIC ACTIVE VERBS

Present Active THEMATIC: Infinitive: amā-re ; Participle: ama-nt-is

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	am-ō	am-e-m	—
2 nd	amā-s	am-ē-s	amā-Ø
3 rd	ama-t	am-e-t	—
1 st	amā-mus	am-ē-mus	—
2 nd	amā-tis	am-ē-tis	amā-te
3 rd	ama-nt	am-e-nt	—

Imperfect Active THEMATIC: Infinitive: none ; Participle: none

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	amā-ba-m	amā-re-m	—
2 nd	amā-bā-s	amā-rē-s	—
3 rd	amā-ba-t	amā-re-t	—
1 st	amā-bā-mus	amā-rē-mus	—
2 nd	amā-bā-tis	amā-rē-tis	—
3 rd	amā-ba-nt	amā-re-nt	—

Future Active THEMATIC: Infinitive: amā-t-ūr-um esse ; Participle: amā-t-ūr-us, -a, -um

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	amā-b-ō	—	—
2 nd	amā-bi-s	—	amā-tō
3 rd	amā-bi-t	—	amā-tō
1 st	amā-bi-mus	—	—
2 nd	amā-bi-tis	—	amā-tōte
3 rd	amā-bu-nt	—	ama-ntō

Perfect Active THEMATIC: Infinitive: amā-v-isse; Participle: none

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	amā-v-ī	amā-v-erī-m	—
2 nd	amā-v-istī	amā-v-erī-s	—
3 rd	amā-v-it	amā-v-erī-t	—
1 st	amā-v-imus	amā-v-erī-mus	—
2 nd	amā-v-istis	amā-v-erī-tis	—
3 rd	amā-v-ērunt (-ēre)	amā-v-erī-nt	—

Pluperfect Active THEMATIC: Infinitive: none ; Participle: none

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	amā-v- era -m	amā-v- isse -m	—
2 nd	amā-v- erā -s	amā-v- issē -s	—
3 rd	amā-v- era -t	amā-v- isse -t	—
1 st	amā-v- erā -mus	amā-v- issē -mus	—
2 nd	amā-v- erā -tis	amā-v- issē -tis	—
3 rd	amā-v- era -nt	amā-v- isse -nt	—

Future-Perfect Active THEMATIC: Infinitive: none ; Participle: none

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	amā-v- er -ō	—	—
2 nd	amā-v- eri -s	—	—
3 rd	amā-v- eri -t	—	—
1 st	amā-v- eri -mus	—	—
2 nd	amā-v- eri -tis	—	—
3 rd	amā-v- eri -nt	—	—

THEMATIC PASSIVE VERBS

Present passive THEMATIC: Infinitive: amā-rī ; Participle: none

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	am-or	am- e -r	—
2 nd	amā-ris (-re)	am- ē -ris (-re)	amā-re
3 rd	amā-tur	am- ē -tur	—
1 st	amā-mur	am- ē -mur	—
2 nd	amā-minī	am- ē -minī	amā-minī
3 rd	ama-ntur	am- e -ntur	—

Imperfect Passive THEMATIC: Infinitive: none ; Participle: none

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	amā- ba -r	amā- re -r	—
2 nd	amā- bā -ris (-re)	amā- rē -ris (-re)	—
3 rd	amā- bā -tur	amā- rē -tur	—
1 st	amā- bā -mur	amā- rē -mur	—
2 nd	amā- bā -minī	amā- rē -minī	—
3 rd	amā- ba -ntur	amā- re -ntur	—

Future Passive THEMATIC: Infinitive: amā-t-um īrī ; Participle: (ama-nd-us, -a, -um)

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	amā-bo-r	—	—
2 nd	amā-be-ris (-re)	—	amā-tor
3 rd	amā-bi-tur	—	amā-tor
1 st	amā-bi-mur	—	—
2 nd	amā-bi-minī	—	amā-minī
3 rd	amā-bu-ntur	—	ama-ntor

Perfect Passive THEMATIC: Infinitive: amā-t-um esse ; Participle: amā-t-us, -a, -um

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	amā-t-us sum	amā-t-us sim	—
2 nd	amā-t-us es	amā-t-us sīs	—
3 rd	amā-t-us est	amā-t-us sit	—
1 st	amā-t-ī sumus	amā-t-ī sīmus	—
2 nd	amā-t-ī estis	amā-t-ī sītis	—
3 rd	amā-t-ī sunt	amā-t-ī sint	—

Pluperfect Passive THEMATIC: Infinitive: none ; Participle: none

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	amā-t-us eram	amā-t-us essem	—
2 nd	amā-t-us erās	amā-t-us essēs	—
3 rd	amā-t-us erat	amā-t-us esset	—
1 st	amā-t-ī erāmus	amā-t-ī essēmus	—
2 nd	amā-t-ī erātis	amā-t-ī essētis	—
3 rd	amā-t-ī erant	amā-t-ī essent	—

Future-Perfect Passive THEMATIC: Infinitive: amā-t-um fore; Participle: none

	Indicative	Subjunctive	Imperative
1 st	amā-t-us erō	—	—
2 nd	amā-t-us eris	—	—
3 rd	amā-t-us erit	—	—
1 st	amā-t-ī erimus	—	—
2 nd	amā-t-ī eritis	—	—
3 rd	amā-t-ī erunt	—	—

APPENDIX A: LATIN POETIC METER

Unlike English poetic meter, which is based on patterns of word stress, **Classical Latin meter was based on QUANTITY, being a pattern of long and short syllables.**²⁰⁵ *Scansion* is the manner of determining how words fit into the metrical patterns of poetry. Each genre of poetry is associated with a specific meter or meters: e.g. epic is written in Dactylic Hexameter.

- A. **Pronunciation:** If poetry is pronounced correctly, it will automatically be in correct meter. Much of the difficulty found in reading quantitative poetry aloud is the result of pronouncing syllables with the wrong quantities: e.g. correct pronunciation has -que not -quē, animālia not animālīa, mihi not mīhī.²⁰⁶

B. Metrical Units:

1. **Morae:** The measurements of metrical time are termed *morae*: a short syllable equals one *mora*, while a long syllable equals two *morae*. A long syllable is thus nominally twice as long as a short syllable, for the purposes of meter.
2. **Metrical Feet:** are patterns of long and short syllables, each of which adds up to a fixed number of *morae*. The most common feet include:
 - a. Feet of 3 *morae*:
 - i. **Iambus:** (Short-Long) [— —]
 - ii. **Trochee:** (Long-Short) [— —]
 - iii. **Tribrach:** (Short-Short-Short) [— — —]
 - b. Feet of 4 *morae*:
 - i. **Dactyl:** (Long-Short-Short) [— — —]
 - ii. **Anapaest:** (Short-Short-Long) [— — —]
 - iii. **Spondee:** (Long-Long) [— —]
 - c. Feet of 5 *morae*:
 - i. **Cretic:** (Long-Short-Long) [— — —]
 - ii. **Paeon Prīmus:** (Long-Short-Short-Short) [— — — —]
 - iii. **Paeon Quārtus:** (Short-Short-Short-Long) [— — — —]
 - iv. **Bacchiac:** (Short-Long-Long) [— — —]
 - d. Feet of 6 *morae*:
 - i. **Choriambus:** (Long-Short-Short-Long) [— — — —]
 - ii. **Ionic ā Minōre:** (Short-Short-Long-Long) [— — — —]
 - iii. **Ionic ā Maiōre:** (Long-Long-Short-Short) [— — — —]
3. **Metra:** The unit of a particular meter, termed a *metron*, is composed of either one or two metrical feet. A line of verse is composed of a certain number of *metra* of the same type of feet. Several poetic meters are named for the number of *metra* that they have: e.g. *Dactylic Hexameter* - 6-*metra*, each composed of 1 dactylic foot; *Iambic Trimeter* - 3-*metra*, each composed of 2 iambic feet.
4. **Cola:** Certain meters, particularly in lyric poetry, are more properly understood as using longer sequences of syllables termed *Cola* rather than collections of mismatched metrical feet.
5. **Stichic and Stanzaic Meters:** Some poetic forms (stichic poetry) are composed of arbitrary numbers of the same type of metrical line [στίχος]: e.g. *Dactylic Hexameter* poems often run to

²⁰⁵ Early Latin meters like the *Saturnian* may have had metrics based at least in part on word stress; Late Latin and Medieval popular meters had to rely on word stress, since the distinctions between long and short vowels and diphthongs had broken down in the common speech.

²⁰⁶ Knowing that a specific syllable must be long or short can often reveal crucial aspects of the syntax: e.g. dīxeritis (*Future-Perfect* Indicative), dīxērītis (*Perfect* Subjunctive); ruere (infinitive), ruēre (*Perfect* Indicative), fugit (*Present* Indicative), fūgit (*Perfect* Indicative).

hundreds of lines. Other poetic forms (stanzaic poetry) are composed of specific sequences of differing types of poetic line: e.g. the *Sapphic Stanza* has three Lesser Sapphic lines and one Adonic.

a. **Enjambment:** The splitting of a syntactic unit across multiple lines is termed *Enjambment* and is used extensively in stichic poetry, which enhances the creation of connected narrative as in epic. The divisions between couplets and stanzas greatly restrict use of enjambment in those meters.

C. **Substitutions:** Metrical feet with the same number of *morae* are able to be substituted for each other in certain positions within the various meters: e.g. the dactyl and the spondee each have 4 *morae* and can be substituted for each other in any of the first five feet of Dactylic Hexameter. In certain positions of certain meters, metrical feet with differing numbers of *morae* may be substituted.

1. **Resolution:** When a long syllable is replaced by two short syllables, it is termed *Resolution*: e.g. many of the long syllables of iambic trimeter may be resolved into two short syllables.
2. **Contraction:** When two short syllables are replaced by a long syllable, it is termed *Contraction*: e.g. in dactylic hexameter, any of the dactyls in the first five feet may be contracted into a spondee.
3. **Anceps:** In certain meters, certain positions can simply contain either a long or a short syllable. This position is termed *Anceps* and is not an example of resolution or contraction.

D. **Word Divisions:** Breaks between words have a number of interactions with the meter and the sense of the poetic lines.

1. **Caesura (cutting):** When the end of a word occurs within a metrical foot. Many meters have a *Principal Caesura* [marked as ||] at specific positions within the line that occurs at breaks in sense; many of these breaks in sense are punctuated in modern editions.
2. **Diaeresis (division):** When the end of a word and the end of a foot/*metron/colon* coincide.
3. **Bridge:** A place within certain meters where the end of a word is avoided is termed a *Bridge*. In *Dactylic Hexameter*, for example, there is a strong tendency to avoid a caesura in the 6th foot; the result of this avoidance is that ending a line with a monosyllabic word is very rare.

E. **Ictus:** In Greek meters, the musical beat, sometimes termed the *ictus* (strike), coincided with the musical down-beat (*thesis*) of each foot: e.g. the long of a dactyl.²⁰⁷ While it is common practice to pronounce Latin meters with a stress beat in partial conflict with word accent, it is more likely correct to only pronounce the normal word accents, while allowing the pattern of *Long* and *Short* Syllables to express the meter.

F. **Hiatus:** Elision occurs in poetry as in all Latin literature and speech, but there are rare occasions when elision does not occur due to a break in sense or for the sake of the meter. This lack of elision is termed *hiatus* (yawning).²⁰⁸

G. **Brevis in Longō:** Under certain conditions, a *Short* syllable may stand in the place of a *Long* syllable. The most common location for this to occur is at line end, where a *Short by Nature* final syllable is made *Long by Position* by the pause at line end.²⁰⁹

²⁰⁷ Ancient grammarians severely mangled the theory and terminology of meter and introduced a great many errors into ancient and modern scholarship: e.g. the ancient error of calling the musically prominent element the *arsis* is still prevalent, especially in discussions of Latin metrics.

²⁰⁸ In Greek Homeric verse, there are many examples of apparent hiatus that were actually caused – long after the composition of the meter in each line – by the loss of the digamma [ɣ] at the beginning of words like [ἄναξ]. Latin poets misunderstood this effect as a feature of Greek verse and imitated it for emphasis or when required by the meter.

²⁰⁹ The *Brevis in Longo* is considered *Long* for the purposes of the meter, whereas the *Anceps* syllable can simply be either *Short* or *Long* for the purposes of the meter.

- H. **Iambic Shortening (*Brevis Breviāns*)**: Particularly in iambic and trochaic dramatic meters, a *Long* syllable may be shortened, if it is preceded by a *Short* syllable and the natural accent of the word falls on the syllable before or after the *Long* syllable.
- I. **Synizesis**: Two contiguous vocalic sounds in two separate syllables may be fused into a single *Long* syllable for the purposes of the meter: e.g. e-an-dem > ean-dem; de-ae-que > deae-que.

I. DACTYLIC METERS:

- A. **Dactylic Hexameter**: the meter of epic poetry (didactic, satire, bucolic, etc.) with six feet [6 *metra*]:
- Only two types of feet are allowed in this meter: the dactyl and the spondee.²¹⁰
 - The 5th foot is almost always a dactyl, but the 6th foot is always a spondee (sometimes with *Brevis in Longo*).
 - The first 4 feet may be either dactyls or spondees, although the dactyl predominates.
 - The *Principal Caesura* is usually in the 3rd foot, either after the first syllable [— || ◡ ◡] / [— || —] (strong/masculine *caesura*), or between the short syllables of a dactyl [— ◡ || ◡] (weak/feminine *caesura*).
 - The P. Caesura is sometimes in the 4th foot (often paired with another in the 2nd foot).
 - A diaeresis at the end of the 4th foot with a break in sense is termed a **Bucolic Diaeresis**, as it is a common feature of the Bucolic genre: e.g. the *Georgics* of Vergil.

— ◡ ◡ | — — | — — | — || — | — ◡ ◡ | — —
mul-ta quo-|qu^e et bel-|lō pas-|sus, || dum| con-de-ret| ur-bem [Long syllables bolded]²¹¹

- B. **Elegiac Couplets**: the meter of Latin elegy uses paired lines (couplets/distichs) composed of two alternating meters: *Dactylic Hexameter* (as discussed above) and *Dactylic "Pentameter"*.
- The 1st half (*hemiepes*) of a pentameter line has two feet (dactyl or spondee) then a long syllable.²¹²
 - The 2nd half (*hemiepes*) of a pentameter line has two feet (both dactyls) followed by a long syllable.
 - There is a *Caesura* between the first and second halves of the pentameter line.
 - Each couplet tends to be a syntactically complete sentence.

1st line: *Dactylic Hexameter*
 2nd line: *Dactylic Pentameter*

Cynthia prima suis miserum me cepit ocellis,
 — — | — — | — || — ◡ ◡ | — ◡ ◡ | —
con-tac-|tum nul-|līs || an-te cu-|pī-di-ni-|bus.

- ## II. IAMBIC AND TROCHAIC METERS:
- These highly flexible meters are used extensively, especially for the dialogue sections, within dramatic works by Plautus, Terrence, and Seneca Iunior, among others. Q. Horatius Flaccus and others used these meters in various combinations in lyric poetry as well.

- A. **Iambic *Sēnārius***: This meter, termed *Sēnārius* due to its six iambic feet, was used for the dialogue sections of comedy by Plautus, Terrentius, and others. Although the meter allows many substitutions, the

²¹⁰ The first syllable of each foot in Dactylic Hexameter is, therefore, always long.

²¹¹ Here, the *Principal Caesura* is in the 4th foot (between *passus* and *dum*); there is a *Diaeresis* at the end of the 4th foot (between *dum* and *conderet*) and at the end of the 5th foot (between *conderet* and *urbem*). The second syllable of *urbem* is short by nature but long by position, due to the line end. Of all the metrically long syllables in the line, only the second syllable of *bellō* is *Long by Nature*.

²¹² A line of *Dactylic Pentameter* is composed of two elements termed *hemiepes* (half-epic), since they are effectively the first half of an epic (*Dactylic Hexameter*) line up to the most common location of the *Principal Caesura*. There is no relation between this meter and English *Iambic Pentameter*.

$$X-\text{ }^{\circ}-|X-\text{ }^{\circ}-|X-\text{ }^{\circ}-$$
$$X-\smile-|X-\smile-|X-\smile-$$
$$X - \overset{\cup}{} - | X - \overset{\cup}{} - | X - \overset{\cup}{} \overset{\cup}{}$$
$$X - \overset{\sim}{-} - | X - \overset{\sim}{-} - | X - \overset{\sim}{-} \overset{\sim}{-}$$

1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th
┐ ─	┐ ─	┐ ─	┐ ─	┐ ─	┐ ─
── ─		── ─		── ─	
┐ ┐ ─		┐ ┐ ─		┐ ┐ ─	
── ┐ ┐		── ┐ ┐		── ┐ ┐	
┐ ┐ ┐	┐ ┐ ┐	┐ ┐ ┐	┐ ┐ ┐		
┐ ┐ ┐ ┐					

- Choliambic: X — ♪ — | X — ♪ — | ♪ — — —
 Iambic Trimeter: X — ♪ — | X — ♪ — | X — ♪ —

- Iambic Trimeter Catalectic: X — ◡ — | X — ◡ — | ◡ — —
 Choliambic: X — ◡ — | X — ◡ — | ◡ — — —
 Iambic Trimeter: X — ◡ — | X — ◡ — | X — ◡ —

- Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic: X — X — | X — X — || X — X — | X — —
 Iambic Trimeter: X — — | X — — | X — —

- Iambic Tetrameter: X — X — | X — X — || X — X — | X — ~ —
 Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic: X — X — | X — X — || X — X — | X — —

Iambic Trimeter: X — ◡ — | X — ◡ — | X — ◡ —

G. **Iambic Dimeter:** Consists of two iambic *metra*:

Iambic Dimeter: X — X — | X — ◡ —
Iambic Trimeter: X — ◡ — | X — ◡ — | X — ◡ —

H. **Iambic Dimeter Catalectic:** Consists of four iambic feet with the final syllable removed (3.5 feet). Differs from Iambic Dimeter only in the 2nd *metron*, where the first position is short, the third position is long, and the final syllable is removed:

Iambic Dimeter Catalectic: X — X — | X — —
Iambic Dimeter: X — X — | X — ◡ —
Iambic Trimeter: X — ◡ — | X — ◡ — | X — ◡ —

I. **Trochaic Tetrameter (Trochaic Octōnārius):** Consists of eight trochaic feet. Substitutions are allowed as in the *Iambic Senarius*:

Trochaic Tetrameter: — X — X | — X — X || — X — X | — X — X
Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic: — ◡ — X | — ◡ — X || — ◡ — X | — ◡ —
Iambic Trimeter: X — ◡ — | X — ◡ — | X — ◡ —

J. **Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic (Trochaic Septēnārius):** Consists of eight trochaic feet with the final syllable removed (7.5 feet) and a *diaeresis* after the 2nd *metron*. In comedy, substitutions are allowed as in the *Iambic Senarius*.²¹⁴

Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic: — ◡ — X | — ◡ — X || — ◡ — X | — ◡ —
Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic (Comedy): — X — X | — X — X || — X — X | — ◡ —
Iambic Trimeter: X — ◡ — | X — ◡ — | X — ◡ —

◡ ◡ ◡ — — | ◡ ◡ ◡ — — | — ◡ ◡ — — | — ◡ —
u-bi tu es, quī | co-le-re mō-rēs | Mas-si-li-en-sēs | pos-tu-lās?²¹⁵

Plautus, *Casina*, 963-967.

— — — — | ◡ ◡ ◡ — ◡ | — ◡ — — | — ◡ —
nunc tū sī vīs | sub-i-gi-tā-re | mē, pro-bast oc- | cā-si-ō.

◡ ◡ — — ◡ | ◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡ — | — ◡ — — | — ◡ —
re-di sīs in cu- | bi-cu-lum; pe-ri-is- | t^her-cl^e. a-g^e, ac-cē- | d^euc mo-dō.²¹⁶

— ◡ ◡ — — | — ◡ — — | — ◡ ◡ — — | — ◡ —
nunc e-go tē-c^{um} ae- | qu^{um} ar-bi-tr^{um} ex-trā | con-si-di-um cap- | tā-ve-rō.

◡ ◡ — — — | — — — ◡ | — — ◡ ◡ — | — ◡ —
Pe-ri-ī, fus-tī | dē-floc-cā-bit | i^{am} il-līc ho-mo lum- | bōs me-ōs.

²¹⁴ The *Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic* is the most common meter in Plautus.

²¹⁵ [tū] is not elided with [es] (*hiatus*) and is shortened (correction) as a result.

²¹⁶ [redī] shows iambic shortening to [redi].

III. AEOLIC METERS: Latin poets made use of a number of meters and stanza forms derived from Greek lyric poetry: i.e. poetry originally written to be sung accompanied by the lyre. In particular, C. Valerius Catullus and, later, Q. Horatius Flaccus adopted the meters of the Greek poets Alcaeus, Sappho, Archilochus, and others for the poetic themes of their *Carmina*, which tended to diverge pointedly from those of epic.²¹⁷ Many of these meters are extensively used in various combinations within stanzaic poetry.

- A. Aeolic meters are based on *cola* rather than on feet *per se*, although the nucleus for these *cola* is the *Choriambus* [— ◡ —], which may be repeated. This choriambic nucleus is typically preceded by an *Aeolic base* and followed by a *tail*; multiple *cola* may be combined in a single line, usually with a *caesura* separating them. Only the *Aeolic base* allows substitutions, with bases of two syllables only allowing: [— —], [— ◡], or [◡ —].

		— —	— ◡ —	◡ — ◡ —
		[base]	[nucleus]	[tail]
Glyconic:		— —	— ◡ —	◡ —
Pherecratean:		— —	— ◡ —	—
Lesser Asclepiadian:		— —	— ◡ —	— ◡ — ◡ —
Greater Asclepiadian:		— —	— ◡ —	— ◡ — ◡ — ◡ — ◡ —
Phalaecean:		— —	— ◡ —	◡ — ◡ — —
Aristophanic:			— ◡ —	◡ — —
Adonic:			— ◡ —	—
Lesser Alcaic:			— ◡ —	— ◡ — ◡ —
Greater Alcaic:	X — ◡ — X		— ◡ —	◡ —
Saphic:	— ◡ — X		— ◡ —	◡ — —
Greater Saphic:	— ◡ — X		— ◡ —	— ◡ — ◡ —

- B. **Phalaecean (Hendecasyllable):** A stichic meter using *cola* of eleven (ἑνδεκά) syllables:

— — — ◡ — ◡ — — ◡ —	— — — ◡ — ◡ — — ◡ —
Cuī dō-nō le-pi- dum no- vum li- bel-lum	
— ◡ — ◡ — ◡ — — ◡ —	— ◡ — ◡ — — ◡ — —
ā-ri-dō mo-do pū-mi-cē ex-po- lī-tum?	
— — — ◡ — ◡ — — ◡ —	— — — ◡ — — ◡ — —
Cor-nē-lī, ti-bi: nam-que tū so-lē- bās	
— — — ◡ — ◡ — — ◡ —	— — — ◡ — — ◡ — —
me-ās es-sē a-li- quid pu-tā-re nū-gās	

²¹⁷ The group of poets active in the generation before Vergil and pursuing contemporary themes in highly polished lyric compositions is often called the *Poetae Novi*. The influence of the Alexandrian poet Callimachos looms large for many poets of this period and the subsequent Augustan age.

- C. **Sapphic Stanza:** A poetic meter created by Sappho of Lesbos in the Greek Archaic period, within which each stanza is composed of three *Lesser Sapphic* lines and one *Adonic* line.

— ◡ — — — ◡ ◡ — ◡ — ◡
Phoe-be sil-vā-rum-que po-tens Di-ā-na,

— ◡ — — — ◡ ◡ — ◡ — —
lū-ci-dum cae-lī de-cus, ō co-len-dī

— ◡ — — — ◡ ◡ — ◡ — ◡
sem-per et cul-tī, da-te quae pre-cā-mur

— ◡ ◡ — —
tem-po-re sac-rō,

— ◡ — X — ◡ ◡ — ◡ — —

— ◡ — X — ◡ ◡ — ◡ — —

— ◡ — X — ◡ ◡ — ◡ — —

— ◡ ◡ — —

- D. **Alcaic Stanza:** a poetic meter created by Alcaeus of Lesbos in the Greek Archaic period, within which each stanza is composed of two *Greater Alcaic* lines, an *Iambic Dimeter* with an additional syllable, and a *Lesser Alcaic* line.

— — ◡ — — — ◡ ◡ — ◡ —
Nunc est bi-ben-dum, nunc pe-de lī-be-rō

— — ◡ — — — ◡ ◡ — ◡ —
pul-san-da tel-lus, nunc Sa-li-ā-ri-bus

— — ◡ — — — ◡ — —
or-nā-re pul-vī-nar de-ō-rum

— ◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡ — ◡ — —
tem-pus e-rat da-pi-bus, so-dā-lēs.

X — ◡ — X — ◡ ◡ — ◡ —

X — ◡ — X — ◡ ◡ — ◡ —

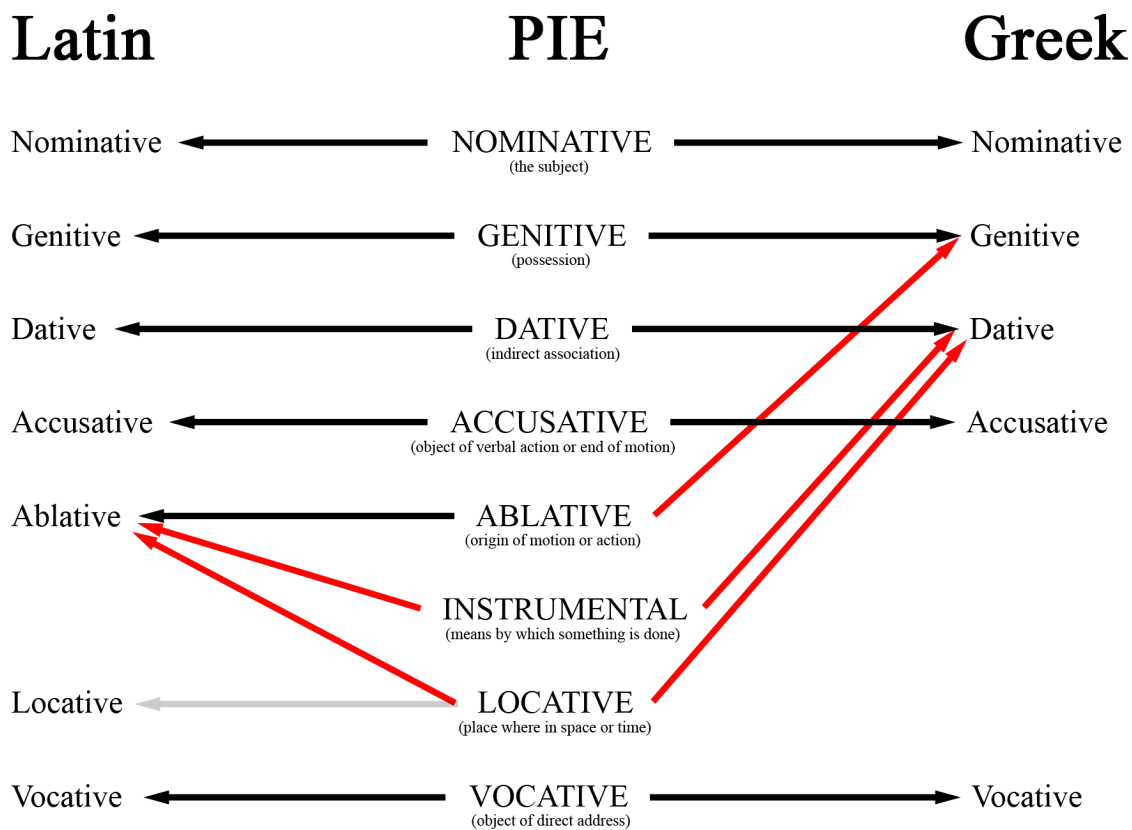
X — ◡ — X — ◡ — X

— ◡ ◡ — ◡ ◡ — ◡ — —

- E. **Asclepiadian I:** A stichic poetic meter composed of *Lesser Asclepiadian* lines.
- F. **Asclepiadian II:** A poetic meter with couplets composed of one *Glyconic* line and one *Lesser Asclepiadian* line.
- G. **Asclepiadian III:** A stanzaic poetic meter composed of three (3) *Lesser Asclepiadian* lines and one *Glyconic* line.
- F. **Asclepiadian IV:** A stanzaic poetic meter composed of two (2) *Lesser Asclepiadian* lines, one *Pherecratian* line, and one *Glyconic* line.

APPENDIX B: PROTO-INDO-EUROPEAN CASES

The language from which both Latin and Greek derive, Proto-Indo-European (PIE), had at least eight cases, possibly nine, each of which was originally morphologically distinct. After the separation of Greek and Latin from PIE, linguistic change across the millennia resulted in the simplification of the PIE case system in both languages. Where syntactic differences were not enforced, morphological distinctions were not maintained, resulting in the collapse of multiple PIE cases into single Greek or Latin cases. The semantic force of the PIE cases was maintained to the extent that exact analogues for nearly every Latin case use are found in Greek - in the case predicted by the chart below.



Observations:

1. The Latin cases derived from one PIE case will have exact analogues for each of their case uses in Greek: e.g. Latin *Dative of Interest* = Greek *Dative of Interest*. The obverse is also true for Greek cases derived from one PIE case: e.g. Greek *Accusative of Extent* = Latin *Accusative of Extent*.
2. The PIE ABLATIVE indicated origin of motion or action, thus all such ideas will be *Ablative* in Latin and *Genitive* in Greek: e.g. Latin *Ablative of Agent* = Greek *Genitive of Agent*.²¹⁸
3. The PIE INSTRUMENTAL indicated the means by which something is done, thus all such ideas will be *Ablative* in Latin and *Dative* in Greek: e.g. Latin *Ablative of Means* = Greek *Dative of Means*.²¹⁹
4. The PIE LOCATIVE indicated the place where in space or time, thus all such ideas will be *Ablative*²²⁰ in Latin and *Dative* in Greek: e.g. Latin *Ablative of Location* = Greek *Dative of Location*.²²¹

²¹⁸ Latin *Ablative of Agent* = Greek *Genitive of Agent*; Latin *Ablative of Cause* = Greek *Genitive of Cause*; et cētera.

²¹⁹ Latin *Ablative of Degree of Difference* = Greek *Dative of Degree of Difference*;

²²⁰ A small number of *Locative* forms remained in use in Classical Latin for the names of cities, small islands, and a few common words: e.g. domī, humī, rurī, et cētera.

²²¹ Latin *Ablative of Respect* = Greek *Dative of Respect*; Latin *Ablative of Location* = Greek *Dative of Location*; et cētera.

APPENDIX C: GLOSSARY

Ablative (case): The Latin *Ablative* encompasses the functions of the PIE *Ablative* (origin of motion or action): e.g. the *Ablative of Place from Which* is an ablative use of the Latin *Ablative* case. The Latin *Ablative* case also absorbed the functions of the PIE *Instrumental* and virtually all instances of the PIE *Locative*. Since the Greek *Genitive* case absorbed the PIE *Ablative* case, but the Greek *Dative* case absorbed the PIE *Instrumental* and *Locative* cases, many of the case usages that employ the Latin *Ablative* have exact analogues using the Greek *Genitive* or the Greek *Dative*, depending on whether the Latin *Ablative* has an ablative, instrumental, or locative meaning: e.g. the Latin *Ablative of Means* is analogous to the Greek *Dative of Means*. The Latin *Ablative* in most instances can be loosely translated with: “from,” “in,” “with,” or “by.”

Accent: Additional vocal stress falls on one of the final three syllables of a Latin word. Classical Latin accent is recessive; it moves as far from the end of a word as allowed by the rules of accent.

Accusative (case): The Latin *Accusative* continues the functions of the PIE *Accusative* (object of verbal action or end of motion).

Active (voice): A property of *Verbal Forms* indicating that the action of the verb is done by the *Subject*.

Adjective (part of speech): An inflected *Substantive* that agrees with a *Noun* in *Case*, *Number*, and *Gender* or stands alone in a case function as a Substantive Adjective. Adjectives belong to the 1st/2nd or the 3rd declensional systems and occur in all three genders, unlike *Nouns*.

Adverb (part of speech): An indeclinable form that modifies *Verbal Forms*, *Adjectives*, and occasionally *Nouns*. An Adverb modifies the way in which the verbal idea occurs or the degree to which an Adjective is applicable. There are three degrees of Adverb: *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*. True Adverbs are derived regularly from *Adjectives*; *Adverbial* forms are isolated and sometimes archaic case usages of *Adjectives* and *Nouns*.

Adverbial (part of speech): A form not derived regularly from an *Adjective* that adverbially modifies *Verbal Forms*, *Adjectives*, and occasionally *Nouns*. In origin, *Adverbial* forms are isolated and sometimes archaic case usages of *Adjectives* and *Nouns*.

Allophone (phonetics): A single phoneme may be pronounced with slight variations depending on its phonemic environment (the phonemes around it) without those variations being semantically: i.e. not every change in sound produces a change in meaning. Each language has its own set of phonemic distinctions: e.g. Japanese does not make a phonemic distinction between [l] and [r], which are thus allophones in Japanese but separate phonemes in English.

Anacoluthon (rhetoric): [ἀνακόλουθον < ἀν- + ἀκόλουθος – not follower] A change of construction within a sentence for rhetorical effect, where the result is strikingly incomplete and effectively ungrammatical connection between elements of the sentence.

Analogy: When confronted by a form that superficially seemed not to follow the rules (νόμοι) of its conjugation or declension (*Anomaly*), Ancient Latin speakers might employ an internal grammar extrapolated from personal experience to make the paradigm uniform using a process of analogical reasoning. Such innovated forms could in turn lead to systematic transformation of morphology and syntax, if the verbal habit spread.

Analogical Leveling: The process of making seemingly anomalous forms within a paradigm superficially consistent with the other forms through analogical reasoning is termed analogical leveling or paradigm leveling. This process is the source of most actual (although not always apparent) irregularity within Greek morphology.

Anceps (meter): In certain meters, certain positions can simply contain either a long or a short syllable. This position is termed *Anceps* and is not an example of resolution or contraction, since the number of *morae* is not equivalent.

Anomaly: Systematic sound changes sometimes produce a paradigm that superficially seemed not to follow the rules (νόμος) of its conjugation or declension, especially at the intersections of different morphemes; this effect is termed *Anomaly* (ἀνωμαλία): e.g. the seemingly irregular forms of [esse].

Antepenultima: The 3rd from final syllable of a Latin word – *ante-paene-ultima syllaba*).

Aorist (tense): A PIE *Tense* that was lost by the time of preserved Latin. The tense marker (morpheme) of the PIE *Aorist* tense was [-s-], which is found in some *Perfect* tense Latin forms: e.g. [dixī = dic-s-ī]. Greek preserves the *Aorist* indicating a punctual *Aspect* and past *Time*.

Apex (orthography): A mark placed above a vowel to indicate that it is long by nature: e.g. Á, Â.

Apocope: Some original final consonants were lost in pronunciation by the time of Classical Latin, particularly when part of a consonant cluster: [*arātrōd > arātrō], [*lact > lac]. In the 3rd declension, *apocope* frequently results from the addition of the *Nominative* [-s]: [*lapid-s > *lapiss > lapis].

Archaism (stylistics): The intentional literary use of obsolete forms or constructions for stylistic purposes.

Article, Definite (part of speech): Classical Latin does not have a definite article, but the demonstrative pronouns can be used to emphasize a particular *Noun*. This use of [ille, illa, illud] evolves into a definite article in several *Romance Languages*: e.g. [(il)le, (il)la] in *French*.

Articulation (phonetics): The particular configuration of the mouth, tongue, lips, and vocal chords required to produce a particular phoneme.

Aspect: An element of *Tense* indicating the state of the action of the verbal form: *Durative* (ongoing), *Stative* (completed). A third *Aspect* is preserved in the Greek *Aorist* tense: *Punctual* (simple completion).

Assimilation (phonetics): When two consonants are brought together within a word, the first consonant often alters to more closely match the second consonant, which is termed *Regressive Assimilation*. Although far less common, *Progressive Assimilation* also occurs: [*vel-se > velle].

Aspirated stop consonants: [PH , TH , CH] these digraphs represent the Attic Greek letters *phi* [Φ], *theta* [Θ], and *chi* [Χ], and are found almost exclusively in words of Greek origin. In educated pronunciation, each corresponds to one of the voiceless series of stop consonants in every aspect except *aspiration* (a roughened breath of air joined to each consonantal sound).

Aspiration (phonetics): Latin [H] represents a roughened breath of air, much like the sound of the initial (h), in *hospitable*. Note that neither use of [H] represents a consonant. In literary Latin of the Classical Period, when placed after the three letters [C , P , T], [H] represent aspirated Greek consonants in transliterated Greek words [X (c^h) , Φ (p^h) , Θ (t^h)]: [φιλοσοφία > philosophia], [ἀμφιθέατρον > amphitheatrum].

Asyndeton (stylistics): The avoidance of conjunctions for stylistic effect, producing a sense of breathless haste and rhetorical drama.

Athematic (conjugation): Often termed "irregular," verbs conforming to this conjugation join the *Ending* directly to the *Verbal Stem*, without using a *Thematic Vowel*. Although verbs of this conjugation were common in PIE, Latin verbs of the *Athematic Conjugation* were all but extinct by the time of Classical Latin.

Attic-Ionic (dialect): The Greek literary dialect of Athens and parts of Ionia. Attic-Ionic dialect was the most common preserved in literature and was the primary source of the Hellenistic Koiné dialect of Greek.

- Attribute (syntax):** A word that modifies another word within the syntactic structure of a sentence. Adjectives and other forms with adjectival modification (e.g. genitive nouns) are typical attributes.
- Borrowing (linguistics):** Due to language contact, especially the extensive existence of bilingualism, words and even syntactic usages may be borrowed from one language into another. The use of loan words is the most common instance of linguistic borrowing.
- Brevis in Longō (meter):** Under certain conditions, a *Short* syllable may stand in the place of a *Long* syllable. The most common location for this to occur is at line end, where a *Short by Nature* final syllable is made *Long by Position* by the pause at line end.
- Bridge (meter):** A place within certain meters where the end of a word is avoided is termed a *Bridge*.
- Bucolic Diaeresis (meter):** A diaeresis at the end of the 4th foot of a Dactylic hexameter line with a break in sense. The bucolic diaeresis is a common feature of the Bucolic genre: e.g. the *Idyls* of Theocritus.
- Caesura (meter):** When the end of a word occurs within a metrical foot, it is termed a "cutting" (caesura). Many meters have a *Principal Caesura* [marked as ||] at specific positions within the line that occurs at breaks in sense; many of these breaks in sense are punctuated in modern editions.
- Case (declension):** A property of *Substantives* (nouns, adjectives, participles) indicated by the addition of case endings to the substantive stem through *Declension*. Case indicates what the possible syntactic function of the substantive can be. There are six functional cases preserved in Classical Latin: *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Ablative*, and *Vocative*. A small number of Latin forms were in use with the *Locative* case as well.
- Catalexis:** The removal of the final position of a metrical line, particularly in iambic and trochaic meters results in an abbreviated variant on the line, which is termed *Catalectic*.
- Cola (meter):** Certain meters, particularly in lyric poetry, are more properly understood as using longer sequences of syllables termed *Cola* rather than collections of mismatched metrical feet.
- Compensatory Lengthening (phonetics):** When phonemes or aspects of a phoneme are lost due to the combination of stems and affixes, a short vowel in the previous syllable is often lengthened.
- Conjugation (inflection):** The systematic changes in *Morphology* (i.e. *Inflection*) that indicate person, number, tense, voice, and mood in verbal forms (verbs, infinitives).
- Conjunction (part of speech):** An indeclinable form that joins sentence elements of usually similar scale (words, phrases, clauses): Coordinating, Subordinating, Correlative,
- Contraction (meter):** When two short syllables are replaced by a long syllable, it is termed *Contraction*: e.g. in dactylic hexameter, any of the dactyls in the first five feet may be contracted into a spondee.
- Couplet (meter):** aka a Distich. a set of paired lines composed of specific meters: e.g. Elagiac Couplets.
- Dative (case):** The Latin *Dative* encompasses the functions of the PIE *Dative* (indirect association). Since the Greek *Dative* case absorbed the PIE *Dative* case, many of the case usages that employ the Latin *Dative* have exact analogues using the Greek *Dative*: e.g. the Latin *Dative of Interest* is analogous to the Greek *Dative of Interest*. The Latin *Dative* in most instances can be loosely translated with: "to" or "for."
- Daughter Language:** A language derived from an earlier language through the regular processes of linguistic change over time. Each daughter language represents a unique set of elements retained from the parent language in combination with idiomatic innovations accumulate over time. Greek and Latin are daughter languages of Proto-Indo-European, as are German, Sanskrit, Persian, and others. While a genetic relationship exists between these various languages, they are not mutually intelligible.

Declension (inflexion): The systematic changes in *Morphology* (i.e. *Inflexion*) that indicate case, number, and gender in *Substantives* (nouns [incl. gerunds, supines], adjectives [incl. participles, gerundives], pronouns).

Defective Verb (conjugation): Verbs that in Classical Latin sources are used only in certain tenses, persons, or numbers, due to the semantic force of the verb or stylistic preference for other forms: e.g. *inquam*. They are said to lack the “missing” forms. Impersonal verbs are often used in the 3rd person only: e.g. *accidit*, while others are used only in the perfect system: e.g. *coepī*, *meminī*, *ōdī*. Although some forms are not attested in Classical sources, it should not be inferred that such forms could not have been produced or understood by Latin speakers, but rather that such forms would not have been considered congruent with literary stylistics.

Dependency Grammar (syntax): The observation that each element of a sentence modifies one and only one other element of the sentence, from which it is said to be dependent (hang down). The semantic nature of this modification is what is indicated by syntactic terminology, and this characterization of modification is crucial for unpacking the full nuance and force of the language. This mode of conceptualizing Latin grammar is visualized in the Tufts Dependency Treebanks, where each element hangs below the element that it modifies within the syntactic tree.

Deponent (conjugation): Deponent verbs have only *Passive* forms but are strictly *Active* in meaning. Some verbs are deponent in only specific tenses: i.e. *Semi-Deponent* verbs. The Latin *Deponent* is derived from the PIE *Middle* voice, indicating that the action of the verb is done by the *Subject* reflexively or with personal interest.

Diaeresis (meter): When the end of a word and the end of a foot/*metron*/*colon* coincide.

Dialect (linguistics): The version of a language used by a particular subset of a language community based on spatial, temporal, or socio-economic divisions. Dialects may have significant differences in pronunciation, morphology, and orthography, yet remain mutually intelligible.

Digraph (orthography): The use of two symbols to represent a single phoneme: e.g. TH, PH, CH, NG.

Diphthongs (phonetics): A *diphthong* is a single sound that glides between the two vowels from which it is composed: i.e. the tongue moves to a different point of articulation while it is being pronounced. *Diphthongs* are complex vocal sounds composed of simple vowels [A E I O V] followed by [I], [V] and later [E], i.e. [AE], [AV], [EI], [EV], [OE], [OV], [VI]. Before another vocalic sound, a diphthong partially retains the consonantal character of its glide [I], [V]. Every diphthong is long in *quantity*.

Distich (meter): aka a Couplet, a set of paired lines composed of specific meters: e.g. Elagiac Couplets.

Double Consonants: [X], [Z] The combination of either [C + S], or [G + S] was represented by the double consonant [X]. The Greek letter *zeta* [Z] is pronounced double [ZZ].

Dual (number): A property of PIE *Substantives* (nouns, adjectives, pronouns) and some PIE *Verbal Forms* (verbs, participles) that indicates that there are exactly two of a thing. The *Dual* is all but absent in preserved Latin, but is extensively preserved in Homeric Greek: *duō* and *ambō* are dual.

Durative (aspect): Indicates ongoing / incomplete action in a verbal form: i.e. the *Present Tense* has Durative Aspect - I am eating.

Elision (phonetics): Much as in modern French, in daily speech and in all literary forms (both prose and poetry) the final syllable of one Latin word typically elided into the initial syllable of the following word, if the 1st word ended in a vocalic sound and the 2nd word begins with a vocalic sound. The final vowel (or vowel +M) of the 1st word is suppressed (along with any initial H of the second word).

Ellipsis (stylistics): Often said to be the leaving out of words that are understood from the context, a better way to conceptualize ellipsis is that Latin authors avoid using redundant or clunky extra verbiage when the meaning was already clear. Elements are not missing; they are avoided because that are not needed or

would result in poor stylistic usage. Ellipsis is especially common with the infinitive [*esse*] and structures that would be repeated unnecessarily.

Enclitics: [-que , -ve , -ne , -met , -pte , -c(e), -cum , -te , (-pse)] A few small words in Latin have no accent of their own and must be pronounced and written together with the preceding word, as if the two were a single word: e.g. [pá-tri-a + -que > pa-tri-á-que].

Ending (morphology): Morphemes (final suffixes) added to the ends of *Verbal Forms* or *Substantives* (along with other suffixes) to produce the final inflected form. Endings convey *Person*, *Number*, and *Voice*, or *Case* and *Number*.

Enjambment (meter): The splitting of a syntactic unit across multiple lines is termed *Enjambment* and is used extensively in *stichic* poetry, which enhances the creation of connected narrative as in epic. The divisions between couplets and stanzas greatly restrict use of enjambment in those meters.

Feminine (gender): A property of *Substantives* (nouns [incl. gerunds, supines], adjectives [incl. participles, gerundives], pronouns) that indicates their grammatical category and thus determines the specific declensional terminations and the mode of adjectival *Agreement*. While the grammatical gender tends to align with the biological gender, they are not equivalent.

First Person (person): A property of *Verbs* that indicates that the *Subject* of the verb is the Speaker/Writer. Only the 1st Person *Personal Pronouns* may serve as the explicit Subject of a verb in the 1st Person: I, We.

Future (tense): A property of *Verbal Forms* indicating a durative *Aspect* and future *Time*. The action is ongoing in the future: e.g. they will run.

Future-Perfect (tense): A property of *Verbal Forms* indicating a stative *Aspect* and future *Time*. As seen from the future, the action is completed. The action is located after the *Present Tense* but before the *Future Tense*. The action is finished in the future: e.g. they will have run.

Gender (grammar): A property of *Substantives* (nouns [incl. gerunds, supines], adjectives [incl. participles, gerundives], pronouns) that indicates their grammatical category and thus determines the specific declensional terminations and the mode of adjectival *Agreement*. While the grammatical gender tends to align with the biological gender, they are not equivalent.

Genitive (case): The Latin *Genitive* continues the functions of the PIE *Genitive* (possession). Since the Greek *Genitive* case absorbed the PIE *Genitive* case, many of the case usages that employ the Latin *Genitive* have exact analogues using the Greek *Genitive*: e.g. the Latin *Genitive of Possession* is analogous to the Greek *Genitive of Possession*. The Latin *Genitive* in most instances can be loosely translated with: “of.”

Gerund (part of speech): A *Verbal Form* that functions as a verbal noun of the 2nd declensional indicating *Active* voice, in conjunction with a gerund suffix: i.e. [-nd-]. All Gerunds are *Neuter*, *Singular*, and occur in the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative*, as well as serving as the *Accusative of the Place to Which* with the preposition [ad] usages of the verbal noun. The infinitive is used for the *Nominative* and *Accusative (Direct Object)* usages of the verbal noun.

Gerundive (part of speech): A *Verbal Form* that functions as a verbal adjective of the 1st/2nd declensional indicating *Future* tense and *Passive* voice as well as modal force, in conjunction with a gerundive suffix: i.e. [-nd-]. The source of the action is often expressed by a *Dative of Agent* for Gerundives.

Glides: [I , V] These voiced phonemes were able to function as either vowels or consonants, depending on the phonetic environment. When following a simple vowel as the second element of a diphthong, the glides still functioned as semi-vowels.

Graecism (stylistics): The stylistic usage of words, forms, or syntax derived from the Greek language: e.g. Vergil's use of Greek declensional endings for many names within the *Aeneid* – Aenēan, Anchīsēn, Andromachē, Pēnelopēs.

Greek (language): The language of the Hellenic and Hellenized peoples, especially of the *poleis* found across the Mediterranean and beyond. Greek shows extensive similarities to Latin morphology and syntax as a result - primarily - of their joint evolution from PIE. Although the Attic-Ionic dialect was the most common preserved in literature and was the primary source of the Hellenistic Koiné dialect, there were several other dialects with significant differences in pronunciation, orthography, and script. Greek was an administrative language in the eastern *Imperium Romanum* and the administrative language of the Byzantine Empire. The relationship of Modern Greek to Classical Greek is complex and politically fraught.

Hemiepes (meter): The 1st half of a Dactylic Hexameter (epic) line up to the *caesura*: two feet (dactyl or spondee) followed by a long syllable. A Pentameter line is composed of two hemiepes units.

Hiatus (meter): Although elision occurs in poetry as in all Latin literature and speech, there are rare occasions when elision does not occur due to a break in sense or for the sake of the meter. This lack of elision is termed *hiatus* (yawning).

Hyperbaton (stylistics): The stylistic separation of two elements of a sentence that are linked through modification: e.g. the separation of an adjective from its noun.

Ī Longa (orthography): The use of an extended letter I to indicate that it is long by nature: e.g. FILII.

Iambic Shortening: The long final vowel of a disyllabic word that has a short 1st syllable is often shortened: e.g. [benē > bene], [quasī > quasi]. In meter, termed *brevi breviāns*.

Ictus (meter): The musical beat, sometimes termed the *ictus* (strike), coincided with the musical down-beat (*thesis*) of each foot: e.g. the long of a dactyl. While it is common practice to also pronounce Greek meters with a stress beat, it is more likely correct to only pronounce the normal word accents, while allowing the pattern of *Long* and *Short* Syllables to express the meter.

Imperative (mood): A property of *Verbs* only with the function of giving a direct command.

Imperfect (tense): A property of *Verbs* only indicating a durative *Aspect* and past *Time*. The action is ongoing in the past: e.g. they were running.

Impersonal Verb (syntax): These verbs have a *Subject*; that *Subject* is just not a person, nor is an "understood it" the *Subject*. The *Subject* of such verb is often a *Nominal Clause* or an *Infinitive*.

Indicative (mood): A property of *Verbs* only with the function of indicating what is, was, or will be real.

Infinitive (part of speech): A form derived from a *Verbal Stem* that is a verbal noun. Infinitives are *Neuter* and *Singular*. The infinitive is used only for the *Nominative* and *Accusative* (*Direct Object*) usages of the verbal noun; other case functions are supplied by the *Gerund*.

Inflexion (grammar): The systematic changes in *Morphology* that indicate (case, number, gender) in *Substantives* and (person, number, tense, voice, mood) in *Verbal Forms*. The inflexion of substantives is termed *Declension*; the inflexion of verbal forms is termed *Conjugation*.

Instrumental (case): The function of the PIE *Instrumental*, which expressed the means by which something is done, was absorbed by the Latin *Ablative*: e.g. the *Ablative of Means* is an instrumental use of the Latin *Ablative* case. Since the Greek *Dative* case absorbed the PIE *Instrumental* case, the case usages that employ the Latin *Ablative* with an instrumental meaning have exact analogues using the Greek *Dative*: e.g. the Latin *Ablative of Means* is analogous to the Greek *Dative of Means*.

Interpunct (orthography): A small mark placed between words in an inscription to separate the words.

Koiné Greek (dialect): The Hellenistic and Roman Imperial Koiné (common) dialect was largely derived from the Attic-Ionic Greek dialect through a process of dissemination and simplification across the Macedonian kingdoms that arose after the death of Alexander III of Macedon. The substantial simplification of the syntax and phonology of Classical Attic Greek can be attributed to the adoption of Greek across a wide geographic and cultural space. Local variation continued to exist. Over time, Koiné abandoned the *Optative* mood and the *Dual* number, and it underwent substantial phonetic transformation on the way toward Byzantine and then Modern Greek.

Labiovelars: [QV (c^w) , GV (g^w)] these digraphs represent a single sound, a labialized voiceless [QV] or labialized voiced [GV] *velar*. Sometimes [SV (s^w)] could function similarly.

Latin (language): The language of the plain of Latium in central Italy that was spoken by the early Romans and Latins. Latin shows extensive similarities to Greek morphology and syntax as a result - primarily - of their joint evolution from PIE. Literary Latin, especially the Classical Latin of the imperial era, was strongly influenced by Greek literary usage and shows extensive use of Greek loan words. Latin was the administrative language of the western *Imperium Romanum* and the local versions of the Vulgar Latin social dialect evolved into the dialects of Modern Latin: French, Italian, Spanish, *et cetera*.

Liquids (phonetics): [L , R] are voiced phonemes. Before a vowel, [L] was a “clear l” as in land, but before a consonant or in final position it was a “dark l” (velarized) as in pill. [R] is trilled as in Spanish.

Litotes (rhetoric): Stating that something is not one thing to emphasize that it is emphatically the opposite: e.g. stating the something occurs [*nōn numquam*] rather than stating that it happens [*interdum*].

Locative (case): The function of the PIE *Locative*, which expressed the place where in space or time, was almost entirely absorbed by the Latin *Ablative*: e.g. the *Ablative of Place Where* is a locative use of the Latin *Ablative* case. Only a few words were still used in Classical Latin in the Locative: the names of cities, islands, and [*domī* , *humī* , *rūrī* , *forīs* , *mīlitiae* , *bellī* , *animī*]; *Locative* forms indicating time were [*herī* , *vesperī* , *temperī*]. Since the Greek *Dative* case absorbed the PIE *Locative* case, the case usages that employ the Latin *Ablative* with a locative meaning have exact analogues using the Greek *Dative*: e.g. the Latin *Ablative of Location* is analogous to the Greek *Dative of Location*.

Long by Nature: The syllable contains a long vowel or a diphthong

Long by Position: The short vowel of a syllable is followed by two distinct consonantal sounds.

Lyric Poetry: Poetry originally written to be sung accompanied by the lyre, was developed by the Greek poets Alcaeus, Sappho, Archilochus, and others for their poetic themes, which often diverged pointedly from those of epic. Many of these meters are extensively used in various combinations within stanzaic poetry.

Masculine (gender): A property of *Substantives* (nouns [incl. gerunds, supines], adjectives [incl. participles, gerundives], pronouns) that indicates their grammatical category and thus determines the specific declensional terminations and the mode of adjectival *Agreement*. While the grammatical gender tends to align with the biological gender, they are not equivalent.

Metonymy (rhetoric): Using a related word to artistically signify a more standard work: e.g. using [*ferrum*] in place of [*ensis*].

Metra (meter): The unit of a particular meter, termed a *metron*, is composed of either one or two metrical feet. A line of verse is composed of a certain number of *metra* of the same type of feet. Several poetic meters are named for the number of *metra* that they have: e.g. *Dactylic Hexameter* - 6-*metra*, each composed of 1 dactylic foot; *Iambic Trimeter* - 3-*metra*, each composed of 2 iambic feet.

Metrical Feet: Patterns of long and short syllables, each of which adds up to a fixed number of *morae*.

Middle (voice): A property of *Verbal Forms* indicating that the action of the verb is done by the *Subject* reflexively or with personal interest. The Latin *Deponent* verbs are largely a continuation of the PIE Middle Voice: e.g. *utor* (I set myself to work).

Mood (grammar): A property of *Verbs* that indicates how the verb functions: to indicate what is, was, or will be real (indicative mood), to show what should or might happen (subjunctive mood), or to give a command (imperative mood).

Morae (meter): The measurements of metrical time are termed *morae*: a short syllable equals one *mora*, while a long syllable equals two *morae*. A long syllable is thus nominally twice as long as a short syllable, for the purposes of meter.

Morpheme (grammar): An element from which an inflected word is constructed that alternate meaningfully to indicate the properties of *Substantives* (nouns, adjectives, pronouns) and *Verbal Forms* (verbs, participles, infinitives). Morphemes include *Suffixes* and *Endings*.

Morphology (grammar): The particular form of a word including all *Morphemes*. The morphology of a word indicates what the possible syntactic functions of the word can be.

Morpho-syntax (grammar): The *Morphology* and *Syntax* of a given word are part of a single phenomenon that creates meaning in an inflected language like Greek or Latin. *Syntax* is created from a combination of *Morphology* and word order.

Nasals (phonetics): [M , N , (NG)] Voiced phonemes produced by resonance in the nasal cavities and a particular point of articulation with the tongue and/or lips. The Latin alphabet lacked a character for the *velar nasal*, with the result that [N] before [C , G , QV] represents a phoneme like the (n) in anchor.

Neuter (gender): A property of *Substantives* (nouns [incl. gerunds, supines], adjectives [incl. participles, gerundives], pronouns) that indicates their grammatical category and thus determines the specific declensional terminations and the mode of adjectival *Agreement*. While the grammatical gender tends to align with the biological gender, they are not equivalent.

Nominative (case): The Latin *Nominative* continues the functions of the PIE *Nominative* (the subject). Since the Greek *Nominative* case absorbed the PIE *Nominative* case, the case usages that employ the Latin *Nominative* have exact analogues using the Greek *Nominative*: e.g. the Latin *Predicate Nominative* is analogous to the Greek *Predicate Nominative*.

Noun (part of speech): An inflected *Substantive* that is the name of a person, place, thing, or idea and stands alone in a case function or in *Apposition* to another *Substantive*. Nouns typically have only a single gender, unlike *Adjectives*.

Number (grammar): A property of both *Substantives* (nouns, adjectives, pronouns) and some *Verbal Forms* (verbs, participles) that indicates one (*Singular*), two (*Dual*), or more than one (*Plural*). The *Dual* is all but absent in preserved Latin, but is extensively preserved in Homeric Greek.

Optative (mood): A property of PIE *Verbs* only with the function of indicating what might happen. The PIE *Optative Mood* evolved into the Latin *Subjunctive* mood. The *Optative* mood is still functional in Classical Greek.

Orthography: The process of representing a word with a sequence of characters. The orthography of ancient Latin was closely, but not perfectly, connected to the correct pronunciation of each word, but there was significant variation in the orthography of Latin inscriptions across dialects and social strata

Participle (part of speech): A *Verbal Form* that functions as a verbal adjective of the 1st/2nd or the 3rd declensional systems and takes its tense and voice from the verbal stem on which it is built, in conjunction with a participial suffix: i.e. [-nt-], [-t-], [-tūr-]. There are only three types of *Participle* in Latin.

Particle (part of speech): An indeclinable form that often functions as an adverbial modifier or clause marker but that is not formally an *Adverb*, *Conjunction*, or other *Part of Speech*.

Part of Speech (grammar): A category that describes the syntactic and morphological behavior of a class of words: *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Adjective*, *Verb*, *Participle*, *Infinitive*, *Adverb*, *Conjunction*, *Preposition*, *Article*, and *Particle*.

Passive (voice): A property of *Verbal Forms* indicating that the action of the verb is done to the *Subject*. The source of the action is often expressed by an *Ablative of Agent* for Verbs or by a *Dative of Agent* for Gerundives (and for some other forms mostly in poetry).

Penultima: The 2nd from final syllable of a Latin word – *paene-ultima syllaba*.

Perfect (tense): A property of *Verbal Forms* indicating a *Punctual Aspect* and *Past Time or Stative Aspect* and *Present Time*. As seen from the present, the action is completed. The action and the emphasis are located before the *Present Tense*. OR The action is located before the *Present Tense* but the emphasis is on the current state of the situation. The action is finished in the present: e.g. they ran OR they have run.

Person (grammar): A property of *Verbs* that indicates, in conjunction with *Number*, what the subject of the verb can be. The majority of verbs encountered in narrative will be 3rd person. The *Personal Pronouns* and *Personal Adjectives* also have the property of *Person*.

Phoenician Writing System: Having origins in the 2nd millennium BCE, the Phoenician writing system was an abjad (representing consonants only). The extensive trade activities of the Phoenicians across the Mediterranean resulted in the transfer of their writing technology (with certain adaptations) to the Greeks, Etruscans, and Latins in the end of the 9th century or beginning of the 8th century BCE.

Phoenician (language): The language of the Phoenician city-states of the Levant and of their colonies throughout the Mediterranean: Tyre, Sidon, Carthage, *et cetera*. Phoenician was part of the Afro-Asiatic language family and was closely related to Hebrew, and more distantly to Akkadian and Egyptian. In Latin the Phoenicians were called *Punici*.

Phoneme (phonetics): One of the set of all possible semantically distinct sounds within a given language.

Pluperfect (tense): A property of *Verbs only* indicating a *Stative Aspect* and *Past Time*. As seen from the past, the action is already completed. The action occurs before the action of the *Perfect Tense*. The action is already finished in the past: e.g. they had run.

Plural (number): A property of both *Substantives* (nouns [incl. gerunds, supines], adjectives [incl. participles, gerundives], pronouns) and some *Verbal Forms* (verbs, participles, gerundives) that indicates that there are two or more of a thing.

Polysyndeton (stylistics): The use of more conjunctions than strictly necessary for stylistic effect, emphasizing the close connection of the coordinated ideas.

Predicate (syntax): Traditional grammars place everything that is not the Subject or one of its modifiers (attributes) into the Predicate. The Predicate describes the Subject and its actions. Modern linguistic theory typically defines the Predicate as the main verb and its modifiers, with the Subject and other structures being the Objects of the Predicate.

Preposition (part of speech): An indeclinable adverbial form that specifies in what way the motion or orientation of the *Case* applies. Specific prepositions occur frequently with particular case usages, but are not the cause of those case usages. In late Latin, the prepositions come to take precedence over the case of their objects, and the case system collapses.

Present (tense): A property of *Verbal Forms* indicating a *Durative Aspect* and *Present Time*. The action is ongoing in the present: e.g. they run/they are running.

Pronoun (part of speech): An inflected *Substantive* form that takes the place of a *Noun*. Multiple forms of Pronoun exist in Latin: *Demonstrative*, *Relative*, *Reflexive*, *Interogative*, *Indefinite*.

Pronunciation: The process of physically producing the sequence of phonemes from which a word is composed. The orthography of ancient Latin is closely, but not perfectly, connected to the correct pronunciation of each word. There are a number of refinements that are required to interpret an impressionistic sequence of characters into the spoken language that it was intended to represent. The ability to correctly segment a word, pronounce its segments for the proper time, and place emphasis correctly are key skills of a native speaker or an advanced scholar.

Proto-Indo-European (language): The reconstructed antecedent of the many Indo-European languages, from which both Greek and Latin developed through regular linguistic change. The extensive similarities in Greek and Latin morphology and syntax are a result - primarily - of their joint evolution from PIE.

Punctual (aspect): Indicates simple completion of the action in a verbal form: i.e. the Latin *Perfect Tense* often has Punctual Aspect - I ate.

Quantity: The metrical length of a syllable is the amount of time that it takes to pronounce that syllable. A *Long Syllable* takes roughly twice the time to pronounce as a *Short Syllable*. A syllable is short unless:

Reduplication: A small number of verbs form the *Perfect* stem by a *reduplication* of the initial consonant followed by [e]: e.g. *Present* [d-ō] versus *Perfect* [de-d-ī], *Present* [can-ō] versus *Perfect* [ce-cin-ī]. This is the standard method of forming the *Perfect* tense in Classical Greek and in PIE.

Resolution (meter): When a long syllable is replaced by two short syllables within a meter: e.g. many of the long syllables of iambic trimeter may be resolved into two short syllables.

Romance Languages: The family of languages derived from the local versions of the Vulgar Latin; the daughter languages of Latin: e.g. Italian, French, Spanish, Catalan, Portuguese, Romanian, *et cētera*.

Rhotacism: Intervocalic [S] was extensively altered, becoming an [R] by the mid 4th century BCE: e.g. [*esit > erit], [*amā-se > amāre], but [es-se > esse] since this [S] was not intervocalic.

Second Person (person): A property of *Verbs* that indicates that the *Subject* of the verb is a (second) person being directly addressed by the Speaker/Writer - the first person. Only the 2nd Person *Personal Pronouns* may serve as the explicit Subject of a verb in the 2nd Person: You, You (pl).

Semantic: The ability to convey meaning. The individual morphemes of an inflected language are semantic, resulting in difficulties for native speakers of English, where only the root and perhaps a pluralization are fully semantic: i.e. students tend to recognize the word and check if it is plural but pay insufficient attention to the internal morphemes.

Singular (number): A property of both *Substantives* (nouns [incl. gerunds, supines], adjectives [incl. participles, gerundives], pronouns) and some *Verbal Forms* (verbs, participles) that indicates that there is only one of a thing.

Stanzaic Poetry: Composed of specific sequences of differing types of metrical line: e.g. a *Sapphic Stanza* has 3 *Lesser Sapphic* lines and 1 *Adonic* line.

Stative (aspect): An *Aspect* that indicates the state of being resulting from completed action in a verbal form: i.e. the Latin *Perfect Tense* often has Stative Aspect - I have eaten.

Stem (morphology): The base from which inflected *Verbal Forms* or *Substantives* are produced by the addition of the appropriate suffixes and endings.

- Stop Consonants (phonetics):** Each of these consonants stops the flow of air, and is produced with a different position of the tongue and shaping of the lips within each series.
- Subjunctive (mood):** A property of *Verbs* only with the function in Latin of indicating what should or might happen. Morphologically, the Latin subjunctive is derived from the PIE *Optative*. The PIE *Subjunctive Mood* evolved into the Latin Future tense.
- Substantive (part of speech):** *Nouns* [incl. gerunds, supines], *Adjectives* [incl. participles, gerundives], *Pronouns*).
- Substantive (syntax):** When an *Adjective* stands alone in a case function, instead of modifying a *Noun* by agreeing in *Case*, *Number*, and *Gender*.
- Substitution (meter):** Metrical feet with the same number of *morae* are able to be substituted for each other in certain positions within the various meters: e.g. the dactyl and the spondee each have 4 *morae* and can be substituted for each other in any of the first five feet of Dactylic Hexameter. In certain positions of certain meters, metrical feet with differing numbers of *morae* may be substituted. When a long syllable is replaced by two short syllables, it is termed Resolution. When two short syllables are replaced by a long syllable, it is termed Contraction.
- Suffix (morphology):** Morphemes added to the stems of *Verbal Forms* or *Substantives* (along with endings) to produce the final inflected form. Suffixes can indicate *Voice*, *Mood*, *Part of Speech*, *et cetera*.
- Supines (part of speech):** [Verbal Nouns] that are masculine, singular, nouns of the 4th declension occurring only in the *accusative* and *ablative* cases with *Active* voice built on the *Supine* stem, and using the suffix [-t-].
- Suppletive Verbs:** A very small number of verbs use stems from more than one PIE verbal root to substitute for their inflected forms, usually for different tenses. The verb “to bear,” for example, has the *Present* [ferō] but *Perfect* [tulī] and *Perfect* passive participle [latus], each from a different PIE root.
- Syllable (pronunciation):** A syllable is a single vocalic sound (vowel or diphthong) pronounced together with any associated consonants. Cf. section 1.7.
- Syncope (phonetics):** Some original internal consonants were lost in pronunciation by the time of Classical Latin: e.g. internal [LL] and [SS] were often simplified (*syncope*): [*mīs-sī > mīsī].
- Synecdoche (rhetoric):** Using a word related to a part to artistically signify the whole: e.g. using [tectum] in place of [domus]. This is a special case of *Metonymy*, also known as *Pars Prō Tōtō*.
- Synizesis:** Two contiguous vocalic sounds in two separate syllables may be fused into a single *Long* syllable for the purposes of the meter: e.g. [deinc] pronounced as one syllable in place of disyllabic [dēhinc].
- Syllable (pronunciation):** A syllable is a single vocalic sound (vowel or diphthong) pronounced together with any associated consonants.
- Syntax (grammar):** [σύνταξις < σύν + τάττειν – to arrange together] The manner in which words are connected to create meaning. *Syntax* is created from a combination of *Morphology* and word order.
- Tense:** A property of *Verbal Forms* (verbs, participles, gerundives, infinitives) indicated by the addition of specific tense marking *Suffixes* (morphemes) to the verbal stem. Depending on the *Mood* or verbal forms in question, the tense can indicate both *Time* (when it happens) and *Aspect* (durative, punctual, stative), or just *Aspect*. There are six functional tenses used in Classical Latin: *Present*, *Imperfect*, *Future*, *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future-Perfect*.
- Thematic (conjugation):** Verbs conforming to this conjugation have a thematic vowel added between the *Verbal Stem* and the *Suffix* or *Ending*. The *Thematic Vowel* [-ε/o-] alternates (ablauts) between [-ε-] and [

-o-] in a standard pattern and is part of the tense stem, not the *Ending*. All but a few Latin verbs belong to the Thematic Conjugation, although the *Athematic Conjugation* was common in PIE.

Thematic Vowel (conjugation): The PIE *Thematic Vowel* [-ε/o-] alternated (ablauted) between [-ε-] and [-o-] in a standard pattern and is part of the tense stem, not the *Ending*. The Thematic Vowel occurs in the *Thematic Conjugation* between that *Verbal Stem* and the *Suffix* or *Ending*. • The majority of Thematic verbs appear to have stems ending in [ā – 1st conjugation], [ē - 2nd conjugation], or [ī – 4th conjugation]. These long vowels are the result of vowel contraction between the thematic vowel [-ε/o-] and three vocalic suffixes, with the result that the thematic vowel is obscured, except in the 3rd conjugation.

Third Person (person): A property of *Verbs* that indicates that the *Subject* of the verb is a (third) person being described to a second person by the Speaker/Writer - the first person. Any nominative *Noun* may serve as the *Subject* of a verb in the 3rd Person: He/She/It, They.

Time: An element of *Tense* that indicates from what perspective in time an action is viewed: Present Time, Past Time, Future Time.

Ultima: The final syllable of a Latin word – *ultima syllaba*.

Variatio (stylistics): The variation of compositional structures for stylistic effect in violation of the strictures of symmetrical composition.

Verb (part of speech): A form derived from a verbal stem that is limited to a particular *Person* and *Number*. A verb functions as the *Predicate* of a sentence.

Verbal Forms (grammar): Forms derived from a verbal stem that retain the properties of *Tense*, and *Voice*. These include *Verbs*, but also *Participles*, *Gerunds*, *Gerundives*, *Supines*, and *Infinitives*.

Vocative (case): The Latin *Vocative* continues the functions of the PIE *Vocative* (object of direct address). Since the Greek *Vocative* case absorbed the PIE *Vocative* case, the Latin *Vocative* case usage is exactly analogous to the Greek *Vocative* case usage.

Voice (grammar): A property of *Verbal Forms* (verbs, participles, infinitives) that indicates whether the action of the verb is done by the *Subject* (active voice), done by the *Subject* reflexively/with personal interest (deponent voice), or done to the *Subject* (passive voice).

Voiced Fricative: [Z] This voiced *fricative* represents the Greek letter *zeta* [Z] and is found exclusively in words of Greek origin.

Voiced stop consonants: [B , D , G] Each of these consonants corresponds to one of the voiceless series of stop consonants in every aspect except voicing: i.e. [B] is a voiced version of [P], [D] is a voiced version of [T], [G] is a voiced version of [C].

Voiceless Fricative: [F , S] The voiceless *labio-dental fricative* [F] was produced with the lips and upper teeth; the voiceless *alveolar fricative* [S] was produced with the tongue just above the teeth.

Voiceless stop consonants: [P , T , C] are made without vibration of the vocal chords.

Voicing (phonetics): The vibration of the vocal chords that accompanies the articulation of some phonemes: e.g. the voiced consonant [B] but not the voiceless consonant [P].

Vowels: Simple vocalic sounds that vary in quality depending on the position of the tongue and the shaping of the lips. Each Latin vowel [A E I O V] may be either long or short in *quantity*. Note that the difference between a long and short vowel can be the only difference between words; it is as significant a difference in spelling as between other letters. The Greek letter *upsilon* [Y] was found almost exclusively in words of Greek origin.

Vowel Contraction (phonetics): When vocalic sounds come together within a word due to the combination of stems and other elements or due to the loss of intervocalic [H], [V], or [I], they contract into a long vowel or a diphthong: e.g. [nihil > nīl], [mihi > mī], [cum + agō > coagō > cōgō].

Vowel Weakening (phonetics): Short vowels and diphthongs found in unaccented, word-internal positions often underwent changes toward less open or less back forms: [a > e > i], [a > o > u], [o > e / i], [u > i]. This effect is most common in compound forms: [in + cadō > incīdō], [duo + decem > duodecīm], [manus + fēstus > manīfēstus]. The original *quantity* of the vocalic sound, however, was generally preserved: [ob + caedō > occīdō], [in + claudō > inclūdō].

Word Order: Although being vastly more free than in English, due to the inflected nature of Ancient Latin, word order was semantic in Ancient Latin, conforming to strong tendencies and being used to create emphasis and rhetorical force. The precise syntactic structure of subordination and modification can only be understood in sequence, and thus reading Latin out of sequence (i.e. jumping around) makes full comprehension of the semantic force of the Latin impossible.